Table of Contents / Categories

| Page | Youtube video link |
|---|---|
| Create a Chatbot | https://youtu.be/BJviH5VrxiM |
| View Setup | https://youtu.be/aE4WK15rGOQ |
| Interactive Landing Page | https://youtu.be/drRLD6AG0EA |
| Flow Setup - Basic Features | https://youtu.be/sEOVjtDYxt8 |
| Flow Setup - Advanced Features Appointment Booking | https://youtu.be/FXxIAtXKcpU |
| Flow Setup - Advanced Features Dynamic Question | https://youtu.be/sdrfdaJMTrc |
| Flow Setup - Advanced Features Real time Search | https://youtu.be/b8Vqs5PyFhs |
| Flow Setup - Advanced Features URL based flow/ Country Based flow/Action Based flow | Country - <u>https://youtu.be/EaReAnKiciw</u> Action - <u>https://youtu.be/uaod00HRIMI</u> URL - <u>https://youtu.be/VRe3Dtuvy3U</u> |
| Flow Setup - Advanced Features Setup Menu Options | <u>https://youtu.be/adIRxr_GZNg</u> |
| Advanced Features FAQs setup | https://youtu.be/0H8MGCq-fAs |
| Multilingual Bot | https://youtu.be/rZQ77ucn15c |
| Install Website/ Blog | <u>https://youtu.be/GjcBiqoKWql</u> - Website |
| Email Follow-ups | https://youtu.be/FEMWB_GnoXs |

| Analytics | https://youtu.be/ZQE0L-roqrE |
|-----------------------------------|------------------------------|
| Sub Flows | https://youtu.be/gOnzC3c6YLA |
| Live Chat | https://youtu.be/RppnCDc2xZE |
| WhatsApp Chatbot | https://youtu.be/xtewLXMDgiw |
| Whatsapp Template Messages | https://youtu.be/-9g267MHi5I |
| Zapier Integration | https://youtu.be/FASO-T7sRzI |
| Adwords Integration | https://youtu.be/40lqthIBRIU |
| Google sheets | https://youtu.be/ixw8QJEc3Rs |
| FB Installation | https://youtu.be/Sh59WF_v-bc |
| Instagram Bots & Installation | https://youtu.be/JA4oOGrh5VM |
| Settings | https://youtu.be/NCV2SQbMd Y |
| Whatsapp E-commerce & Catalog | https://youtu.be/ONJoCDkQbpQ |
| FB Business Manager | https://youtu.be/tE9vSHwI-3E |
| Cloud API From Meta | https://youtu.be/7IXmq9oFZhs |
| Freshdesk/ Freshsales Integration | https://youtu.be/cBxSvC_R9mM |
| Applying Temp Messages in Meta | https://youtu.be/CoTIzD6sSmo |
| Green Badge Verification in Meta | https://youtu.be/9kIR1eihDDg |

1. Create a chatbot (outer section) faq

Hello, welcome to SmatBot!

SmatBot is a chatbot platform that you can use to design omnichannel and multilingual bots in just a few minutes.

To begin, follow the steps below or watch the video above.

Step 1:

- Sign Up on our Website
- Log In to our Dashboard.

| Sot Al Chatbot for all your × + | | | | | | | | / | v – a |
|-----------------------------------|------------------------------------|----------------|----------|------------------|----------|---------|-------|-------------------|------------|
| C 🔒 smatbot.com | | | | | | É | ☆ 🙂 | 🦻 🗉 🖊 | 🛛 🗯 🗊 🖬 🚺 |
| Subsidiary of SyteQuark | | Product | WhatsApp | New Instagram | Partners | Pricing | Login | Free Trial | Book Demo |
| - | | | | | | | | | |
| | € | | | | <u>e</u> | | | | |
| Automate Engage & S | Conversations to Support Custom | o Acqu ers. | ire, | | (i) | 4 | | | |
| No coding, Easy c | ustomization, Sensible prio | ing | | | | | S J | $\mathbf{\Theta}$ | |
| Part Parts | | | | | | | | | |
| Book Demo | Start Free Trial | | | | | 9 | | | |
| *Try Free Trial for 14 day | s *No Credit Card Required | | | | X | 10 | | 1 | |
| | | | | | 6 | | | | |
| | ~ | | | | | Ι | | -1 | Can I help |
| | <u> </u> | | | | | - | | | you ? |
| | | | | | | | | | 26 |
| | | | | | | | | | |

Step 2

- Click on **Create New Bot**.
- Choose between:
 - Lead Generation Bot (or) Any Data Collection Bot
 - Customer Support Bot.
- Choose between
 - **Pick From Templates** to use a predefined template (or)
 - Create Your Own Bot to start from scratch.

Step 3

- Name your Chatbot.

Step 4

| R apour | × + eductor (cor) website test | tabraatupõõ | or, id=57528proNi | jevill New tenap induit | | | | | | |
|--|---|--|--|---|--|---|---|--|--|--|
| Ind Ind Ind Inder Calify Calify Calify Calify Calify Calify Calify Calify Calify Calify Calify | to ite | Landia; | | | Carlot MERCE LESS Carlot Annual Carlot Carlot Carlot Annual Carlot Carlot Carlot Annual Carlot | Des Cre ins | sigr eate tall | n, e ai yo | nd our bot | t. |
| | | | | | | | | | | |
| (# 1201 % > DELPA | × 4 naráci.com to C w 1860 TR TRI | rhat natuoli miseoap | ket, id= 57528cmell | Laness Versional Anna Anna | | of * maximum territoria | né restuelikot, kér 5752lie Xéltup | velle, jenstij Ven Setup | Four Sealing Berthell | 2 2 3 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 |
| ● 1201 90 > DEEMA Main He | x 4 watercom to c within 11 th | hat not poli motion to etap k User | tor, id= 1752barel | uperil Mar Salay Roo Salay Paran I Salak A par Isaan | v = 0 1) • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • | o s example in cash of the cas | at versetilet. Ve 17/(te 1981.p Britagen | volie, trukij Von Setup Wood Syp wood Syp | Nor lature water Copy this code anigned Nater instant any subscript of This (see supprises during) = 1000 years product again water of this (see | N |
| i and a second s | x 4 mattectore to contact to the contact to the con | nationalist notation k Unit k Unit k Unit k | | uperil Ven same 1 status mann: 1 status per geneter 1 tratus per geneter | v - 0 v - | t • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • | at rotuction, de l'éclie Nature Entreparte Entreparte | edit (m.1) Ven (m.) Winkship Residence | New Sec | Al Construction of the second |
| Arpol Arpol Andin He Andin Andin Andin Andin Andin Andin Andin A | x 4 mathectors, bo constant co | Anteriores Anteri | eor. (dr. s712)Scorell Color C | Luncti Ver strap Too Seas From: 1 Status per trans 2 Stratus per grander 2 Stratus per grander | | t and the second | an reprove Malers, Mar Shi Char Tanthaga an Pradawana Managanana Managanana | edic (nul) Ver State With Align With Align Missing Arg Massing Arg | Next Self. The Self Self Self Self Self Self Self Sel | An and a set of the se |
| treat treat treat | | Althermodel Althe | | Lanetti Taka salaya "Basa Masa Antari Sanata Masa bayaa Sanata Masa bayaa Sanata Masa bayaa Sanata Di Masa bayaa Sanata Di Masa bayaa Sanata Di Masa bayaa Sanata | A C C A C C C C C A C C C C C A C C C C C C A C C C C C C A C C C C C C C A C C C C C C C A C C C C C C C C C A C C C C C C C C C C C C C C A C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C | t k karanteria ka teria karanteria karanteri | | webs (pr.41) Vers (pr.4) West | National Internet Control of the State of th | An Anna ann an Anna Anna Anna Anna Anna |

- Create & and install your bot.
 - View Setup Design the look and feel of your bot. For more details, <u>click here</u>.
 - Flow Setup Design the content of your bot. For more details, <u>click here</u>.
 - Install Follow platform specific instructions to install your bot. For more details, <u>click here</u>.
- Note: The preview on the right-hand side of the page shows you the changes in real-time as you make them.

Voilà! Your bot setup is complete. For any further questions/enquiries, please contact us at support@smatbot.com.

View Setup

• Post video (30 sec)

You can use this section to design the look of your bot. Follow the video guide above or the steps below to learn more.

| You can u | se this section to | design the look of | your bot. |
|-------------------------------|------------------------------------|----------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| You can add/ update text | ➔ Avatar/Company Logo | | Theme and Color |
| Website Bot Landing Page Bot | Website Bot Landing Page Bot | Website Bot Londing Page Bot | Website Bot Landing Page Bot |
| Text > Logo > Layout > Themes | Text > Logo > Loyout > Themes | Text > Logo > Layout > Themes | Text → Logo → Layout → Themes |
| DEEPAK WEBSITE TEST | Company Logo () | But Position () | Choose a Theme |
| | File Size should be less than 5 MB | | Header Background |
| Welcorron Telef | Avotor 0 | Message Bubbles (9 HR HII HII | Question background |
| Rot Description 0 | · 🕹 🐥 🚯 💲 | Option Border Radius Ø | Answer Bockground |
| Mulish Upx • | | Button Text Alignment () | Options Background |
| | | | Option Border Color |
| | | | Criss stategyrams |

1. You can add/alter:

- i. Welcome Text, Font and Font Size
- ii. Avatar/Company Logo
- iii. Bot's Position
- iv. Theme and Color
- Once you are satisfied with the changes, click on save. You can always alter any of these settings later (even post installation).

Interactive landing page

• Post video (20 sec)

You can use SmatBot to make an entire landing page an interactive bot. To do this, simply follow the video guide above or the steps listed below.

| × + | | | | | | ~ | | ٥ |
|---|------------|-------------------|-------------------------|--------|----------|--------------------|-------|------|
| app.smatbot.com/bot?tab=setup⊥_id=6792&profile_id=411 | 1 | | ie 🛊 | 😁 🎛 | т 🕱 | 8 8 | ₹ 🗆 | |
| ts > DEEPAK WEBSITE TEST>Setup | Flow Setup | Install | | | T | test test@felts | o.com | • • |
| Website Bot | | | | | | | Pre | view |
| | 😩 🛛 Bot qu | estion here | | | | | | |
| Choose a Theme 🚯 | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | Visite | or answe | r here | | |
| | +91-72 | 07897336 - Numb | er here | | | | | |
| Page Background | Sampl | e options and but | ton will look like this | | | | | |
| Gradient Color Image Video | | Option 1 | | | | | | |
| Solid Color | | Option 2 | | | | | | |
| Question Background | | | Confirm | | | | | |
| Answer Background | | | | | | | | |
| Input Background | Enter text | | | | | > | | |
| | | | Powered By SmatBat | | | | | |

• Step 1:

- Click on the Landing Page section of View Setup in the dashboard. Edit the theme/colours etc to create the look you want.

- Step 2
 - Go to Flow Setup and design the content of the bot. <u>Click here</u> for a detailed guide on question types.
- Step 3:

Go to the Install section and then click on **Landing Page Installation**. Copy and paste the link in your browser.

Amazing! You have successfully created an Interactive Landing Page Bot. You can use this link in emails, messages and much more.

Flow Setup - Basic Features

Add questions to your chatbot flow. To begin, follow the steps below or watch the video above.

For a detailed guide on different question types, please <u>click here</u>

| Bot | | × + | | | | | ¥ - |
|------|------------------|-----------------------------|---------------------|---------------------|------------|-----------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| G | app.sma | tbot.com/bot | ?bot_id=679 | 2&profile_id=411 | &tab=setup | | 🖻 🖈 😌 🎛 🔟 🗮 🔝 🌲 🗐 🖬 |
| Bots | > DEEPAK V | VEBSITE TES | T>Setup | | View Set | up Flow Setup Install | test test@feltso.com |
| ſ | Main Flow | ~ | + | | ר | Search | Q English (Default) Y Proviou |
| | | Asl | k User | | | ? What is your name | / A 🖸 t |
| | ? Question | Single Choice | Email | Multiple | \sim | | User's reply |
| | - | | | 00 | | What is your gender? | / 🖞 🗋 🖻 |
| | Mobile Number | Number | Rating | Date Picker | | | User's reply |
| | () Time | • | 2 | tie. | | D Enter your mobile number | / A 🗋 B |
| | Picker | | nunge | Upload | | | User's reply |
| | Website | Ask Contacts | Order Items | Authentic | | # How many bots do you want? | / A 🖸 8 |
| | Form | Carousel with buttons | Dynamic Question | Real Time Search | | | User's reply |
| | | | | | | ★ How would you rate our company? | / 🏠 🖸 🖻 |

- a. Ask User
 - i. Ask your user for inputs such as emails, phone numbers, button clicks etc.
- b. Show User
 - i. Show your user images, videos, files, etc.
- c. Setup Menu Optionshttps://www.feltso.com/help_center_desc/AI_ChatBots
 - i. Setup quick actions on your bot. For a detailed guide, <u>click here</u>.
- d. FAQ's Setup
 - i. Setup Frequently asked questions. For a detailed guide, <u>click here.</u>
- e. Al-enabled
 - i. Add AI to your bot. For a detailed guide, <u>click here</u>.
- f. Live Agent
 - i. Add Human agents to your bot. For a detailed guide, <u>click here</u>.

- g. Only for WhatsApp
 - i. Special features applicable only for WhatsApp bots. For a detailed guide, click here.
- h. Only for Instagram
 - i. Special features applicable only for Instagram bots. For a detailed guide, <u>click here</u>.
- 2. Creating Sub-Flows. Sub-Flows can be created to stay organized and keep unrelated aspects separate (E.g. two different flows for two different products)

| A | that same (| Photo ide 6 703 | Reporting inter 444 | 7 thinks are send to an | | |
|------------|-------------|-----------------|---------------------|-------------------------|--------------|-------------------------|
| PAK WEBSIT | t TEST-Setu | p | | create Sub Flow | × | E X C B I K L X X I L C |
| New Sul | b Flow 🗸 | + / 0 | | New Sub Flow |] | Q English (Detault) 🤎 |
| 2 | OH | | | Create | ections have | re been added yet. |
| | # | * | <u>_</u> | | | |
| Öļ | <u>•</u> | 4 | * | | | |
| * | 4 | - | 4 | | | |
| 14 | | | Q | | | |

- a. Click on the '+' icon Next to the 'Main Flow' dropdown box to create a Sub-Flow.
- b. Add a name and click on create.
- c. Add question types the same way as above.

General Notes:

- 1. You can either drag and drop or click on a question type to add it to the flow.
- 2. You can edit/duplicate/delete your questions. You can also attach images or GIFs to your questions.
- 3. You can Bold/Italicize/Underline the content.
- 4. You can use **Data Referencing** to use data from a previous answer (E.g. Name) throughout the flow.

5. You can set up **Conditional Flows** to trigger different flows based on the user's response. (By default, the questions will flow as per the order in the dashboard)

Once you are satisfied with the changes, click on preview to see how your bot would look. You can always alter any of these settings later (even post installation)

Flow Setup - Advanced Features

Appointment Booking *add video here

Use this question type to set up appointment booking on your bot. To begin, follow the steps below or watch the video above.

Step 1

Click the **Appointment Booking** Question type in the dashboard.

| Bot | | × + | | | v – |
|------|----------------------------|------------------|---------------------|-------------------|---|
| C | app.sma | tbot.com/bot | ?tab=setup&l | bot_id=6792&profi | lejd=411 🕑 🏠 😨 🖽 🕅 🔞 🏇 🗊 🚺 |
| Bots | > DEEPAK V | VEBSITE TES | T>Setup | | View Setup Flow Setup Install T test test@feltso.com |
| | Mobile Number | # Number | Rating | Cote Picker | Search Q English (Default) Y Prov |
| | O Time | Q | 2 | | User's reply |
| | Picter | | Aug. | Uplead | * How would you rate our company? |
| | % Website | Ask Contacts | Order Items | Authentic ator | User's reply |
| | M. | Carousel | Dynamic | Q Real Time | 🗯 When is your birthday? 🕜 👗 🖻 🍵 |
| | - COM | buttons | Question | search | User's reply |
| | Appointm ent Booking | | | | 🖄 When would you like to book your appointment? 🕜 🔥 🖬 🗈 🕯 |
| | | Sho | w User | | User's reply |
| | Statement | URL Navigator | Product Carousel | Carouset | |
| | | Show | Show | Elene File | |

Step 2

Integrate your appointments with Google or Outlook Calendar.

Step 3

Adjust all the settings as required. Enable specific days, time zones, slots & more to match your requirements. In the case of a booked or unavailable slot, indicate the message which will be displayed to the user.

Step 4

Set a Title & Description for your meeting. Use a physical address or a virtual link to add to the meeting invite.

Click **save** once you are done.

Step 5

| - | occom/signut | o?cid_code=R | 8X43oDiB3qictWil | ZObgl_9JEEwesP9 | ivCtDNjyMI. | | | | o• i£ ☆ |
|--|---|--|---|--|---|--|---|---------------------|---|
| | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | SmatBot | < Back | | | |
| | | | | | 0 | 0 | Free Pla | in includes | |
| | | | | | 0 | -0 | | | |
| | | | | Full Name | i . | | TOYON | | |
| | | | | sachin | | | Source | de por mouth | |
| | | | | Phone | | | - TINDIS | awarang keri bad | |
| | | | | India (+ 🗸 | 6281662503 | | | e analog eng | |
| | | | | Referral C | ode | | Tenet | Scharch | |
| | | | | Enter you | ir Referral Code | | I Balant | - boi thioanin link | |
| | | | | How did y | rou know us? | | 🗸 maat | | |
| | | | | Word of n | nouth | Ý | | | |
| | | | | | | _ | | | |
| | | | | | 5 | | | | |
| | | | | | Already have an accou | unt ? Login | | | |
| | | | | | Home WhatsApp | Pricing | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | |
| t | × + | | | F | Appointment I | Booking | | | y - 8 |
| t C 🔒 app.sma | × + atbot.com/bot | ?tab=setup&t | ot_id=6792&profil | A e_id=411 | Appointment I | Booking | 역 년 ☆ 😑 | H T M V | ✓ – Ø I → I □ (0) |
| t C 🔒 app.sma ots > DEEPAK WI | × + atbot.com/bot | ?tab=setup&b | ot_id=6792&profil Edit Question | ₽_id=411 | Appointment I | Booking | Q @ ☆ ම × | H T 🕊 🛡 | ✓ – Ø I ◆ ★ I □ Ø I ◆ MALENTER |
| t 3 🔒 app.sma ota - DEEPAK WI | × + atbot.com/bot | ?tab=setup&t | ot_id=6792&profil Edit Question Note: Please pr | e_id=411 ess "Enter" for Para | Appointment I | Booking | 역 년 ☆ @ × © | | V – G • * F () (• MH • MH |
| t 3 A app.sma 3 app.sma 3 app.sma 4 | × + atbot.com/bot | ?tab=setup&t | ot_id=6792&profil Edit Question Note: Please pr Size * Line | e_id=411 ess "Enter" for Para Breaker B I | appointment I graph break ≘ ≡ 2 % | Booking | Q & ☆ @ × ⊕ | H T M V | V - 6 N N N O |
| t 3 e app.sma ots > DEEPAK WI | × + atbol.com/bot | ?tab=setup&b | ot_id=6792&profil Edit Question Note: Please pr Size = Une When would | e_id=411 ess "Enter" for Para; Breaker B I you like to book yo | graph break | Booking | Q @ ☆ @ × © | EF T M V | V – G N N N O N N N O N N N O N N N O N |
| t 3 e app.smi ota - DEEPAK WI 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 | × + atbot.com/bot | 7tab=setup&t | ot_id=6792&profil Edit Question Note: Please pr Size * Une When would | e_id=411 ess "Enter" for Para Breaker B <i>I</i> you like to book you | appointment l graph break ⋿ ⋿ ध ७ ur appointment? | Booking | Q & ☆ ● × ⊕ | EE (7 M V | V – Öl O * Fi O Mellenssen Mellenssen Prover Autoritettettettettettettettettettettettettet |
| t 3 e app.sm/ ota + DEEPAK WI 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 | x + atbot.com/bot | Plab=setup&b | et_id=6792&profil Edit Question Note: Please pr Size = Une When would | e_id=411 ess "Enter" for Para Breaker B I you like to book you | appointment l graph break ⋿ ⋿ ॻ ७ ur appointment? | Booking | Q @ ★ € × © | H (1 M V | V – C C S * Z C C C S * C C C C C C C S * C C C C C C C C S * C C C C C C C C C S * C C C C C C C C C C C S * C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C S * C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C |
| t C A app.smc ota > DEEPAK WI C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C | x + atbot.com/bot | Tab=setup&t ietup **** | et_id=6792&profil Edit Question Note: Please pr Size = Une When would Bo | e_id=411 ess "Enter" for Para Breaker B I you like to book you | araph break IIII IIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIII | Booking | Q @ ☆ @ × © nced | H (1 M V | ✓ → → → → → → ↓ |
| t C A app.sma app.sma app.sma bits - DEEPAK WI C C C C C C C C C C C C C | x + atbot.com/bot | Tab=setup&d ietup *** *** | Edit Question Note: Please pr Size * Une When would Bo Note: Please r | e_id=411 ess "Enter" for Para Breaker IB I you like to book you ssic | araph break IIII IIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIII | Booking Adva | Q @ ☆ @ × © nced | H I N V | V - O C V Fundamental C V Fundamental C V Fundamental C V Fundamental C V Fundamental C V V Fundamental C V V V V V V V V V V V V V V V V V V V |
| t 3 A app.sma ots - DEEPAK WI Common Series Series A | × + atbot.com/bot | Rab=setup&d | et_id=6792&profil Edit Question Note: Please pr Size = Une When would Be Note: Please r | e_id=411 ess "Enter" for Para Breaker B <i>I</i> you like to book you usic | appointment I graph breck IIII IIII IIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIII | Booking Adva arsection of each other utilook Calendar | Q @ ☆ @ X © nced | EE D M V | V - 6 Mentionent |
| t. 3 A app.sma ots > DEEPAK WI Demonstration Toma traine Toma traine Toma traine Toma traine Toma traine | × + atbot.com/bot | Rab=setup&t etup ***** ***** ***** | et_id=6792&profil Edit Question Note: Please pr Size * Une When would Bote: Please f | e_id=411 e_id=411 ess 'Enter' for Para Breaker 13 // Breaker 13 // ssic ssic Connect Connect | graph break = = = = = = % wr appointment? Media r conditions are an inite dar or | Booking Advo arsection of each other utlook Calendar Connect | Q @ ☆ @ X © nced | | V - 6 I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I |
| t 3 P app.smi 3 P app.smi 3 P app.smi 4 P app.smi 5 | × + atbot.com/bol | Pab=setup&d: setup ***** ***** ***** ***** | et_id=6792&profil Edit Question Note: Please pr Size * Une When would Br Note: Please r | e_id=411 ess "Enter" for Para Breaker B I you like to book you sisic Connect Connect | graph break = = v % ur appointment? Media dar or | Booking Advo arsection of each other utlook Calendar Connect | Q @ ☆ @ X © nced | | V - 6 N N N N N N N N N N N N N N N N N N N |
| t 3 Papp.STM 3 Papp.STM 3 Papp.STM 3 Papp.STM 4 Papp.STM 4 Papp.STM 4 Papp.STM 5 P | × + atbot.com/bol | Plab=setup&t | Edit Question Note: Please pr Size * Une When would Bo Note: Please r Select week | e_id=411 e_id=411 e_id=411 e_id=411 ess 'Enter' for Para, Breaker B // you like to book you ssic constet that the below Coogle Calen Connect days to enable da | graph break = = u % ur appointment? Media r conditions are on inter idar or tes | Booking Adva arsection of each other utlook Calendar Connect | Q @ ☆ @ × ⊕ nced | | ✓ − 6 I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I |
| t 3 Papp.sm/ app.s | × + atbot.com/bot | Tab=setup&t etup * * * * * * * * * * * * * * * | Edit Question Note: Please pr Size * Line When would Bo Note: Please f Select week Select week | e_id=411 e_id=411 e_id=411 ess "Enter" for Para, Breaker B I you like to book you ssic constent the below Google Calen Connect days to enable da TuE 1 | Appointment I graph break III III IIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIII | Adva Adva arsection of each other utiook Calendar Connect FRI SAT | Q @ ☆ @ × © nced | | ✓ − 6 ○ > > ○ ○ > > ○ ○ > ○ > ○ ▲ ○ > ○ ▲ ○ > ○ ▲ ○ > ○ ▲ ○ > ○ ▲ ○ > ○ ▲ ○ > ○ ▲ ○ > |
| t app.sm/ | × + atbot.com/bot BBSITE TEST-S | Prab=setup&t eetup **** **** **** **** **** **** | Edit Question Note: Please pr Size = Une When would Bo Note: Please r Select week Select week Disable N | e_id=411 e_id=411 ess "Enter" for Para, Breaker B I you like to book you ssic conje Calen Connect days to enable da i TuE i t ext (Days) Er | Appointment I | Advo Advo arsection of each other utlook Calendar Connect FRI SAT C Enable Future (1 | Q @ ☆ @ × © nced sun aays) | | ✓ − 6 ○ > > ○ ○ > > ○ ○ > > ○ ○ ▲ ○ > ○ ▲ ○ > ○ ▲ ○ > ○ ▲ ○ > ○ ▲ ○ > ○ ▲ ○ > ○ ▲ ○ > ○ ▲ ○ > ○ ▲ ○ > ○ ▲ ○ > ○ ▲ ○ > ○ ▲ ○ > |
| t app.sm/ | x + atbot.com/bot com/ | Rab=setup&ti ietup **** **** **** **** **** **** **** | Edit Question Note: Please pr Size = Une When would Bo Note: Please r Select week Select week Disable N 0 Fibio 2 | e_id=411 ess "Enter" for Parao Breaker B I you like to book you ssic connect days to enable da TuE 1 ext (Days) Er | Appointment I graph break IE = L % ur appointment? Media dar o tes MED THU MD Date : mm/dd/yyyy | Adva Adva arsection of each other utlook Colendar Connect FRI SAT C Enable Future (1 | Q LA C C | | V - 0 I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I |
| t app.sm/ | x + atbot.com/bot com/ | Tab=setup&d iet.up **** **** **** **** **** **** **** * | Edit Question Note: Please pr Size = Une When would Bo Note: Please r Select week Select week Disable N 0 Enable Pc | e_id=411 ess "Enter" for Para Breaker I3 I you like to book you ssic Connect Connect days to enable da tue | Appointment I | Booking Adva arsection of each other tutiook Colendar Connect FRI SAT Enable Future (E | Q @ ☆ @ × © nced | | V - 0 I I III III III IIII IIII IIII IIII IIIII IIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIII |
| t 2 Pappstru 2 P | x + atbot.com/bot.com/bot atbot.com/bot.com/bot atbot.com/bo | Tab=setupⅆ ietup **** **** **** **** **** **** **** * | et_id=6792&profil Edit Question Note: Please pr Size = Une When would Br Note: Please r Select week Select week Select week Disable N 0 Enable Pc | e_id=411 ess "Enter" for Para ess "Enter" for Para Breaker B I you like to book you ssic consect Connect days to enable da to tue tue tue ext (Days) | Appointment I | Adva Adva arsection of each other utlook Calendar Connect FRI SAT D Enable Puture (C | | | V - 0 I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I |

Integrate the calendar into the question. Allow all the settings and continue.

Step 6

The calendar has been successfully integrated, and you have set up appointment booking on your bot.

Note: Whenever an appointment is made, you and the recipient will receive an email invite and have the event show up on your calendar.

URL/Country/Action based flow

• Add video

Alter your flow based on:

- 1. URLs show relevant conversation based on which URL the user is on. E.g. Careers page vs Contact us page
- 2. Actions show relevant conversation based on the user's actions.
- 3. Country relevant conversation based on which country the user is browsing from. E.g. Price in USD vs Rupees.

| 🔗 https://www.amath | utcom | 🖉 https://www.amat | bot.com/whatsapp-chatbot |
|--------------------------------------|--|---|--|
| | y = 8 | Assetive law H & E preformer vivilitace-induct | и – и С 2 и т и т и т и т и т и т |
| SmattDot Product WhataApp Instep | promi Partners Pricing Login Free Trial Block Device | SmetBot Product Whatakap | Instagram Partners Pricing Login Fiseficial Book Demo |
| | 🙍 emantest 🛛 🕴 🗸 | * | 😟 smonter 👔 👻 |
| 🗸 . | | 5 | nooch 2 201 ker pooper 2 vough Witestapp |
| Automate Conversations to Acquire, | | One-Stop Solution for WhatsApp Business API | Conjunction for Which age |
| Engage & Support Customers. | | Chatbor, LiveChat and 3rd Party Integrations | Alterative of the second secon |
| Early Dane Dark Dare Trial | Let 1 Cov | Houde Determine They Press Triat The University They Determine Triat | Constrained in the second seco |
| | All Downg Hourd | | A TANK AND |
| | | | |
| East Drive Cast Des Trail | With Rock down and the second and th | Ref Free Tod Ty fan far in Hoan McDeal Decimared | Terret constant Terret |

*add image here

Dynamic Questions

Add video

*add image here

Dynamic Question

Dynamic responses help you show data from your back-end with respect to the visitor queries for multiple use cases

| 0 | SmatBot Dynamic | 1 × | 6 | SmatBot Dynamic | ÷ ~ |
|---|---------------------------|--------------|---|---------------------|--------------------|
| ٥ | Helio | | | | 1005 |
| ٥ | What is your Employee Id? | | ٥ | Welcome Uday | |
| | | 1005 | ٩ | Choose the options | |
| ٥ | Welcome Uday | | | | Payslips |
| ٥ | Choose the options | | ٥ | Select the month | |
| | ESHC | - 1 | | | May 2022 |
| | Attendance | 5 | | Smatbot Open PDF | |
| | Insurance | | ٥ | | |
| | Powered | ey 🖬 SmatBat | | Po | wored by 🖬 SmatBot |

Dynamic responses help you show data from your back-end with respect to the visitor queries for multiple use cases ranging from 'Location-Based Responses', 'Order Status' to 'Fully Automated Support'. The setup is divided into two sections:

- Dynamic Question Setup in SmatBot
- Sending Responses from your Endpoint

Dynamic Question Setup in SmatBot

Step 1:

Add the dynamic question to your question flow and proceed to the setup process.

| Bot | | × + | | | | | | | | | | | | Y | - | 1 |
|----------------|------------|-----------------------------|---------------------|---------------------|------------------|--------|---------------------|--------|-----------------|----------|----------|-------------------|-----------------------|--------|---------|--------|
| C 🔒 ap | p.smatbo | t.com/bot? | bot_id=1355 | 9&profile_id=1 | 0965&tab=setup | | | | | 6 \$ 6 | H T | n 🐹 🐨 | 8 | | - =1 | |
| 1 Enterprise E | • | Settings | 🕮 cciop 🧿 | Online Logo Ma | sker 🕑 Alibaba M | lail Ø | 🗑 🙆 smatbot ma | • | doodleblue 👱 fe | itso 🔇 🥚 | s3 image | Loan Vect | or Imag | es | | |
| Bots > Sma | tBot Dyr | namic>50 | tup | | View Se | tup | Flow Setup | In | stall | | 5 | Sreema mayi.ka | ıyi sturi@g | gmail. | om | |
| 2 | | • | | | | | | | Search | ٩ | Eng | lish (Default) | × | | P | review |
| Quest | ion | Single Choice | Email | Multiple Choice | | 66 | Hello | | | | | | 1 | 4 | 0 | Û |
| Mob | lle Ser | # Number | Rating | Date Picker | | ? | What is your Employ | ee Id? | | | | | 1 | * | 0 | • |
| Tim | e er | | Range | | | _ | | | | | | | | Us | er's re | ply |
| q | | 2+ | - | Q. | 7 | ۲ | +++Employee Id Che | ck*** | | | | | 1 | 4 | 0 | Û |
| webs | ite | Contacts | Items | ator | \sim | | | | | | | | | Us | er's re | ply |
| For | m | Carousel with buttons | Dynamic Question | Real Time Search | | 0 | Choose the options | | | | | | 1 | Ψ | 0 | đ |
| Appel | ntm. | | | | | | | | | | | | | Us | er's re | ply |
| Rock | nn | Show | v User | | ^ | ۲ | Display Last 6 Mont | hs | | | | | 8 | Ψ | 0 | Ô |

Step 2

Type in the details of your endpoint in the API section for sending data.

| natBot | | × | + | | | | | | | ~ | <u>-</u> |
|--------------|-----------|------------|---------------------|-------------------------------|----------------------------|-----------------------|----------------|------------|-----------------|-------------------------------|----------------|
| C | app.sm | atbot.com/ | bot?bot_id=135 | 59&profile_id=10965&tab=setup | | | Q 12 \$ | e # | T 🐹 🛡 🖪 | | = |
| vlail Enterp | prise E 🕒 | Setting | gs 🔤 ccbp 🕻 | Online Logo Maker 🔇 Alibab | Mail 🚱 🧐 🎰 smatb | ot mail 🔺 doodleblue | 🙍 feltso 🔇 | 🏮 s3 imag | e 🚺 Loan Vector | Images_ | |
| Bots | SmatBot | ynamic>s | etup | Edit Question | | | , | | S Arear | <mark>ayi</mark> saungigma | |
| | | | | Note: Please press "Enter" fo | r Paragraph break | | 0 | 0 | | | Prest |
| | ? | 0 | - | Size * Line Breaker] | 3 I ≔ ⊨ ⊻ % | 0 | | | | | - |
| | | | | ***Payslips*** | | | | | | | and a supplice |
| | 0 | # | * | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | 1 4 | 0.0 |
| | 0 | 9 | 2 | GET 🗸 https:// | www.smatbot.com:8101/testi | ngmultipleresponses | | | | 0 | or's reply |
| | | | 2 | Params Co | okies Authorization | Headers | Error Handling | 1 | | 1 4 | |
| | 8 | | (| | | | | | | | |
| | | | | empld | Main Flow 🗸 | What is your Employe | e 🗸 📋 | | | | or a reply |
| | Sec. | - Colorest | Dynamie Question | month | Main Flow 🗸 | Display Last 6 Months | ~ 💼 | | | / 4 | 0.0 |
| | - | | | + 400 | | | | | | | er's reply |
| | - | | | T ADD | | | | | | | |
| | | 5 | how User | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | Can | cel Save | | | | |
| | 66 | 0 | 1 | | | | _ | | | | |

Step 3

Add input fields to define the context before sending the required data to your API endpoint from SmatBot. If you have a static value to send, add it in the format listed below.

Select the **Static Text** question from the dropdown and enter your key and value in **key=value** format.

| natBot | × | + | | | | | | | ~ | |
|-------------------|-------------|-----------------|-----------------------------------|--------------------------|-----------------------|----------------|--------------|---------------------|-------------------|------------------|
| C 🔒 app | smatbot.com | /bot?bot_id=135 | 59&profile_id=10965&tab=setup | | | 0 6 4 | 🕒 🎛 🝸 | 🗙 🔍 🖪 | | • = 🗆 |
| Mail Enterprise E | 🗅 🌣 Settir | ngs 🏧 ccbp 🤇 | 🕽 Online Logo Maker 🕝 Alibaba Ma | il 🚱 🤭 🙆 smatbo | at mail 🔺 doodleblue | 🧧 feltso 🔇 | 👂 s3 image 🛔 | Loan Vector Im | nages | |
| Bots > SmotBo | A Dynamic× | Setup | Edit Question () | | | × | | S Steems mayikas | yî Kuraştarine | eun |
| | | | Note: Please press "Enter" for Pa | ragraph break | | ٢ | 9 | | ~ | Prest |
| ? | 0 | 2 | Size = Line Breaker B | I ≔ ⊨ ⊻ % | | | | | | |
| | | | ***Payslips*** | | | | | | | and a resolution |
| 0 | # | * | | | | | | | | |
| 1000 | - Artist | and a | | | | | | | 1 4 | 0. |
| O | 9 | 1 | GET 🖌 https://www | .smatbot.com:8101/testin | gmultipleresponses | | | | | ser's reply |
| | | | Params Cookie | s Authorization | Headers | Error Handling | | | 1.4 | |
| P | 4 | C | | | | | | | - | |
| | | | empld | Main Flow 🗸 | What is your Employe | e 🗸 📋 | | | - | ser's reply |
| 12 | | Dynamia | month | Main Flow | Dianimul and 6 Months | | | | 1 4 | |
| | | Constant | monun | wait now | Disploy Lost o Monors | | | | | and a second se |
| | | | + ADD | | | | | | | and a redshift |
| Charge . | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | Show User | | | | | | | | |
| 66 | 0 | - 22 | | | Can | Savé | | | | |

Step 4 (Optional)

In the case that you are using SmatBot on a login page, you can identify the user logged in and ask SmatBot to send cookies data instead of explicitly asking them who they are.

| atBot | | × + | | | × – |
|--------------------|---------------|--------------------|---|--------------|--|
| C a | app.smatbot.c | com/bot?bot_id=135 | i59&profile_id=10965&tab=setup @ | 2 @ ☆ @ | H T M V E 👌 🛪 🗐 🗖 |
| 1ail Enterprise E. | 🚥 📫 s | ettings 🎫 ccbp 🌘 | 🕽 Online Logo Maker 🔇 Alibaba Mail 🔇 🮯 🙆 smatbot mail 🔺 doodleblue 🧧 | 🛯 feltso 🔇 😑 | s3 image 🔀 Loan Vector Images |
| Bolts > Serve | atiliai Dunam | instation | the second se | | S Steemayl |
| | | ne - partop | Edit Question (9) | × | moyxostargrigmatican |
| | | | Note: Please press "Enter" for Paragraph break | ٢ | Q English (Default) Y Prev |
| 3 | ? 0 | | Size 👻 Line Breaker B I 🖽 🏣 🔟 % 🗖 | | |
| | | | Display Last 6 Months | | / A D # |
| 5 | 4 | * * | | | |
| | | | | | × 4 0 8 |
| e | 9 9 | 2 | GET v https://www.smatbot.com/kya_backend/ClientUtils/get_last_si | ix_months | User's reply |
| | | | Params Cookles Authorization Headers Err | Tor Handling | 140.0 |
| ٩ | 6 4 | \mathcal{C} | | • | |
| | | in the second | Enter a cookie Do not Send in Params | | User's reply |
| 4 | | Dynamic | | | / 4 0 8 |
| | | Question | T ADD | | Concession of the local division of the loca |
| G | 2 | | | | |
| | and . | | | | × 4 0 8 |
| | | Show User | | | User's reply |
| | e 0 | | Cancel | Save | |

How To Send Response from your API Endpoint

Step 1

- You can use snippets from <u>this document</u> to send a custom response to SmatBot.
- If you need to send any static parameters, select **Static Text** and then give the parameter a value in the following format: **parameter_name=parameter_value**

You can refer to the example below.

If your response format looks like this:

```
{
    "slides": [{
        "option": "OrderID#1230",
        "image_url": "https:\/\/s3.ap-south-1.amazonaws.com\/custpostimages\/ladies_top_1.jpg"
    },{
```

```
"option": "OrderID#1231",

"image_url": "https:///s3.ap-south-1.amazonaws.com//custpostimages//ladies_top_2.jpg"

}],

"image_url": "",

"question_text": "Can you select the order you facing trouble with Mrs samantha",

"type": "radio_slides"
```

}

SmatBot will show your response like this.

Error Handling

If the response returns an error to SmatBot, it is handled as shown in the image below.

• Add image



Any response code other than '200' will be considered as an error.

Real time search

Add video

*add image here

| Real-time search helps you dynamically search and display data on a bot | Bot Preview : SmutBot : Hello Please type the item name! aloe vera extract (stp) aloe vera extract bg aloe vera extract in-bg aloe vera extract in-bg | |
|---|--|--|
|---|--|--|

Real-time search helps you dynamically search and display data on a bot. The setup is divided into two parts:

- Real-time search setup in SmatBot.
- Sending Responses from your Endpoint.

Real-time Search Setup in SmatBot

Step 1:

Add Real-time search in your question flow and proceed to the setup process.



Step 2

Type in the details of your **endpoint in the API** section to send the data.

| C 🔒 app.sn | natbot.com/b | ot?bot_id=136 | 62&profile_id=10965&tab=setup | Q 🖻 🕁 🕒 I | # T # V E 🕹 🛪 🗐 🖬 |
|-------------------|--------------|---------------|--|-----------------------|-------------------------------------|
| Enterprise E 🗈 | Settings | 🕮 ccbp 🕻 | 🕽 Online Logo Maker 🥱 Alibaba Mail 🚱 🧒 🎰 smatbot mail 🔺 doodlebi | lue 📔 feltso 🔇 🍦 s3 i | image 🔯 Loan Vector Images |
| Bots > SmotBot I | RealTime Se | tup | | _ | S Srsemayl mayikasturijigmal.com |
| | | | Edit Question | × | |
| | A | sk User | Size * Line Branker B / HE IE U % D | | D, English (Default) 🤟 Preview |
| ? | 0 | | Please type the Item name. | _ | / A O # |
| 0 | # | | | | × 4 0 # |
| ACC . | - | 101 | GET 🗸 | sineget point | User's reply |
| O Torus Prater | • | - | Params Cookies Authorization Headers | Error Handling | / A 0 # |
| æ | 4 | 1 | choose a label Select a question 🗢 | | × 4 0 8 |
| | - | | + ADD | | User's reply |
| 1951 1947 | All Lots | Rectifies | | | |
| | | | | _ | |
| | | | | ancel Rove | |

Step 3

Next, add columns below the endpoint to send the required data to your API endpoint from SmatBot.

Step 4

Give names to your cookies and send them directly to your API.

Send Responses from your Endpoint(Client-Side)

You need to return a list of all items as an array. This list will show up as a selectable dropdown.

• image

Response Format Example

```
Response format:
```

{

items_list:["one item","second item","third item"]

Error Handling

If the response returns an error to SmatBot, it is handled as shown in the image below.

• Add image



Any response code other than '200' will be considered as an error.

Setup Menu

• Add video

Add a Setup Menu to your bot to make certain actions easier for the user to do. Follow the video above or guide below to set this up.

Step 1

Once you login into your account, navigate to the setup section of your bot.

Step 2

}

Now, click on **Flow Setup**, scroll down the question types, and click on **Setup Menu Options** and configure the options based on your preference.

| × + | | v - 0 |
|---------------------------------------|--|--------------|
| app.smatbot.com/bot?bot_id=12 | 763&profile_id=11&tab=setup 🔍 🖻 🔀 🍸 🐹 🦁 | * = 0 0 |
| s > SmatBat-Setup | Menu Options x | alliot.com |
| 66 O E | Let me know more about your A Singelish Econourity Methods and Sin | Preview |
| 0 1 | Califus C | |
| · · · · | Jump to 1 | User's reply |
| 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 | Pawerd by Service | 40. |
| Setup Menu Options | Coll - Coll - Coll us +91 40 4952 007 | _ |
| Selected Options 양 @ 퀸 뒨 | Type Text Country Mobile Whatsap v Whatsapp us +91 (Inc v 40 4952 0079 | Duer's reply |
| FAQs Setup | Type Text Flow Question | |
| () | Type Text Flow Question | |
| AL FRANKLAS | Cancel | User's reply |

You can add the following options.

- 1. **Call:** Initiate a call directly from the chatbot.
- 2. WhatsApp: Send a direct Whatsapp Message.
- 3. Tawk.to: Redirect your users to a tawk.to live agent in real time.
- 4. Zendesk: Redirect your users to a Zendesk live agent in real time.
- 5. URL: Redirect your users to a Website or a URL.
- 6. **Jump To**: Send your users directly to a question in the chatbot flow.

FAQs Setup

• Add video

FAQs Example

An Omni-channel chatbot can be pre-defined to answer basic to complex queries.



| app.smat | www.com/worrbot_id=22dcph | ome_nu=+rroctab=setup | | 4 | E W C | ana 👔 | · · · | • * | |
|------------------|---------------------------|---------------------------|----------------------|--|-------|-------|----------------|--------------------|------------|
| Bots > SmotBotDE | M-Setup | Edit Question | | | × | | Т | test to an a state | eltas com |
| | | Note: Please press "Enter | for Pargaraph break | | 0 | | | | |
| | Setup Menu Options | | D I I | | | Q 10 | plah (Default) | ~ | Prev |
| | Selected Options | Size - Line Breaker | $B I := := \Sigma$ | | | | | | |
| | | Choose your question | below | | | | | 1 4 | 0.0 |
| | | | | | | | | E UN | er's rephy |
| | FAQs Setup | | | | | | | | |
| | | Basic | Mec | dia Advanci | ed | | | 1 4 | 0.0 |
| (?) FAQu | | Show Options Ver | tically Horizontally | | | | | 1 4 | 0.0 |
| | Al-Enabled | Options | Sub-Flow | Jump To | | | | | or's ropty |
| 0 | | company | Main Flow 🗸 | How would you rate our comp ${\smile}$ | | | | 1 4 | 0.0 |
| and the second | | whateana | Main Flow | Wheele has blocked a Barred Fig. or | | | | 100 | er's reply |
| | Map Intents | windsapp | Main How V | whatsapp Message based Hc 👻 | | | | | |
| | | + ADD | | | | | | · | |
| | Live Agent | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | |
| କ | | | | Cancel | Save | | | | |

You can use this question type to have your frequently asked questions appear on the screen even after an option is chosen for easy back-and-forth navigation.

Step 1 Login to Smatbot

Step 2

Create a Customer Support Bot.

Step 3

Name your bot.

Step 4

Create your bot flow as per your requirements.

Step 5

Add the FAQ's question type to the top of your flow. Add all the options and relevant jumps.

Step 6

Great! You have set up FAQ's successfully on your bot.

Email Follow-ups

• Add video

Automatically send an email follow-up to a user who leaves behind their email address.

Step 1:

Login to your SmatBot account and navigate to the **Account tab** \Rightarrow **Email Server Credentials** tab.



Step 2:

Type in the credentials of your Email Server.

| Se Se | mateot 🗙 🖪 smateot A | Chatbot for all your X S https://zmail.zono.com/zn/share X + | | | š – | - 1 |
|-------|---------------------------------------|---|---------------------|------------------------|-------------------------|-----|
| < → | C @ app.smatbot.com/account | | Q LA \$ | | 👌 🗱 ≕/ 🔲 | 9 |
| MAR | Mail Enterprise E 💶 🏟 Settings 🐃 ocbp | 🗿 Online Logo Maker 🚱 Alibaba Mail 🚱 🧐 🙆 smatbot mail 🔺 dood | leblue 🔛 feltso 🚱 🥮 | s3 image 👿 Loan Vector | Images | э |
| | | | | | test test@feltso.com | * |
| • | | | | | | |
| | 20 Your Profile | Host | | | | |
| - | Chappe Password | smip.zona.com | | | | |
| | | Port | | | | |
| | Create Department | 2 10 | | | | |
| | 😩 Create User | | | | | |
| | Email Server Credentials | Username | | | | |
| | Live Chat WhatsApp Natification | | | | | |
| | | Password | | | | |
| | Delete Account | and the second se | | | | |
| | | Test | | | | |
| | | | J | | | |
| | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | |

Please refer to this guide if you are having any issues with this setup.

Step 3:

| | atsot X Smatter | it Al Chatoot for all your X E | https://zmail.zoho.c | om/zm/share × + | | | | | | | ×. | | | 1 |
|-------------------------------|-------------------------------------|------------------------------------|----------------------|-------------------------|--------------------|---------------|-------------|---------|---------|-----------|----------------|-----------|-----|---|
| $\leftrightarrow \rightarrow$ | C @ app.smatbot.com/bot?tab=tr | iggers⊥_id=22&profile_id= | =411 | | | Q 12 12 | • | 10 T | | 8 | * | =1 🗆 | | |
| M AliM | ail Enterprise E 😰 🏟 Settings 🕮 cob | p 🧿 Online Logo Maker 🧯 | Alibaba Mail 🕥 | 😁 🙆 smatbot mail | ▲ cloodleblue | 😨 feitso 📀 | 6 s3 | image 🔽 | Loan Ve | ctor Imag | es | | | 3 |
| | Bots > SmatBotDEM>Triggers | | | | | | | | | T | test test@i | eltso.com | • * | |
| + | | Main Flow 🗸 | Select | • Save | | | | | | | | | | |
| Ô | Email Notification | Fee all Fallow was | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 36 | SMS Notification | Note: Send on ou | tomated email folk | w up to your leads (or | nce they leave bet | and their eme | ail respon | se) | | | | | | |
| | S WhatsApp Notification | | | Create a | new Email follow | -up. | | | | | | | | |
| 0 | Google Sheets | | | Create a | new Email follow- | up. | | | | | | | | |
| 9 | CRMs | 0 | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 22 | | | | Saved | Email follow-up | a. | | | | | | | | |
| 0 | 2 Zapier Integration | | | You have no | saved email follo | w-ups. | | | | | | | | |
| - 541 | Webhook/Endpoint | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | 🖆 Email Follow-ups | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 26 | Pending Triggers | _ | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | • | 1 |

Next, go to the '**Triggers**' section and navigate to '**Email follow-up**'.

Step 4:

Click on **Create a new Email follow-up**, name your campaign, and then click on **Save**.

| • Sn | matBot X SmatBot A | I Chatbot for all your 🗙 🤄 https://zmail.zoho.com/zm/sharii 🗙 🕇 | ~ − ¢ × |
|-------|--|---|--|
| ← → | C @ app.smatbot.com/bot?tab=trigg | rs⊥_id=22&profile_id=411 Q | ·☆ ⑧ Ⅲ Ⅲ ₩ ◎ Ⅲ • ≯ ≕ □ ◎ : |
| M AIO | Bots > SmatBotDEM>Triggers | 🗿 Online Logo Maker 🧔 Albaba Mail 🦉 🤭 🌚 smistpot mail 🛦 doosleblue 🔛 tetts: | o 🥥 🥌 su image 💓 Loan Vector Images initiation in test test test (test (teltau.com |
| | Email Notification SMS Notification WhatsApp Notification Google Sheets CrMs Zapier Integration Webhook/Endpoint Email Follow-ups Pending Triggers | Main Flow Select Sove Email Follow-up Note: Send an automated email follow up to your leads (once they leave behind the Check your saved campaigns here Set up a name for your Email Follow-up Campolgn Name Sove Sove<!--</th--><th>er email response)</th> | er email response) |

Step 5:

Type in the subject line (mandatory), and add any email addresses you would like to CC or BCC (optional).

| Smatbut | X SmatBot Al Chatbot for all your | x Shttps://zmail.zoho.com/zm/share x + | | | - □ |
|-------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|---|--------------------------------|----------------------------|--------------------------|
| ← → C ^a app.smatbo | com/bot?tab=triggers⊥_id=22&pro | file_id=411 | Q 🖻 🕸 | 😑 HE 🔳 🗮 🛡 🖬 | 👌 🛪 🗐 🔲 🔕 |
| M AliMail Enterprise E 💶 🌼 | Settings 📫 ccbp 🧿 Online Logo Make | r 🔇 Alibaba Mai 🔇 🤭 🙆 smatbot mail 🖌 | doodleblue 🔝 feltso 🔇 | 🏮 s3 image 🛛 🔯 Loan Vector | images |
| Bots > SmatBotDEM>Trig | gers | | | | teat testgifeltse.com |
| + | Main Row 🐱 | Selact • Sove | | | |
| SMS Notification | € Email Folla Note: Send ar | w-up a automated email follow up to your leads (once they | leave behind their email respo | nse) | |
| WhatsApp Notificat | on | Check your say | ved campaigns here | | |
| Google Sheets | | Email Follow-up - | users Email Follow up 🖋 | | |
| CRMs | | CC (Separate emails by comma) | | | |
| z= * Zapier Integration | | cc | | | |
| Webhook/Endpoint | à | | | | |
| si fanai falimenan | J | BCC (separate emails by comma) | | | |
| a | | | | | |
| Pending Inggers | | Subject * | | | |
| | | Subject | | | |
| | | Data Re | derencing 0 | | |
| | | | | | |

Step 6:

Draft the email and then click on Save.



Note: You can use data from the bot's responses to embed into the email.

Step 7:

Select the condition that will trigger the Email Follow-Up.

Note: Leave this blank if you don't have any such conditions.

| | unitate La cuinte le la Ane. e 😤 achatementation and e 1. |
|---------------------------------------|--|
| ← → C | ab=triggers⊥_id=22&profile_id=411 Q 🕑 🏠 🔟 🚺 👌 🐎 🛒 🗖 🔕 🗄 |
| M AliMail Enterprise E 😰 🤹 Settings 🕿 | 🖌 ocbp 🖸 Online Logo Maker 🚱 Albaba Mai 🚱 🧐 🙆 smatbot mail 🔺 doodleblue 🧧 felso 🚱 🥮 s3 image 👿 Loan Vector Images 😕 |
| Bots > SmatBotDEM>Triggers | T tett |
| + | Main Paw V Select · Bowe |
| 🗴 🔤 Email Notification | |
| SMS Notification | remail Follow-up Note: Send on automated email follow up to your leads (once they leave behind their email response) |
| WhatsApp Notification | Check your saved campaigns here |
| Coogle Sheets | Email Fallow-up - users Email Follow up 🥒 |
| CRMs | Templote 🖌 |
| zapier integration | Transil Follows on will under solv where |
| Webbook/Endpoint | Moin Blow M Coloria guantilian M |
| and the small follow-ups | |
| a child Politik aps | Sove |
| Penaing inggers | |
| | |
| | |
| | |

Congrats, you have successfully setup Email follow-ups.

| | × SmatBot | Al Chatbot for all y X | https://zmail.zoho.com/zm | Vs 🗙 📵 Wordtune Editor | 🗙 🛛 🖓 Parap | rasing Tool QuillEot X | + ~ - | - • > |
|----------------------|-------------------------|------------------------|---------------------------|--------------------------|-----------------------|--------------------------|---------------------|-------|
| · · C · | mail.zoho.com/zm/shared | Threads.do?mad=0801 | 126acfb15bb800d71e8467f | e0cd00000e4dc10bb7dc2428 | a5202b337dd 🖉 | a 🕒 🔠 📰 🐹 | 1 1 6 * = | |
| AiMail Enterprise E. | 🚥 🏟 Settings 🕮 o | tbp 🧿 Online Logo M | aker 🕲 Alibaba Mail 🔇 | 🞯 🎯 smatbot mail 🔺 | doodleblue 😰 feitso | 📀 🥚 sð image 👿 L | oan Vector Images | 3 |
| A MAIL | | | | | | | | |
| 🖾 Mail | | | | | | | | |
| Therefore | n in the Dece | . Tandia | | | | | | |
| 1 BallKS I | or your inquiry in Duca | India | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | |
| IN | | ~ | | | | | | |
| | | 5 | | | | | | • |
| Hello I | ear, | - | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | |
| Thank | ou for inquiring with | You are we | lcomed athe be | st IT training institut | e where you get prop | er theoretical and | practical knowledge | |
| on each | specialized IT cours | e under guidance o | of the best trainer. We | offer finest placement | at top companies with | th the best salary | package. | |
| | | | | | | | | |
| Our Ca | eer Experts will soon | get in touch with | you till then enjoy y | our day and keep smilin | 8- | | | |
| | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | |
| Thanks | | | | | | | | |
| (and the | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | |

Multilingual Bots

• Add video

Make your bot multilingual to provide the best user experience wherever you are. To begin, follow the steps below or watch the video above.

Step 1:

Login into SmatBot & navigate to your bot.

Step 2:

Go to **Settings** and navigate to the **Language** section.

*add image

| Small | tBot | × | + | | | | | | | | | | | × |
|----------------|--------|-------------------|------------------|---------------|----------------|----|---------|---|---|-----|---|-----|-----|-----------------|
| ← → | C i | app.smatbot.com | n/bot?tab=settin | gs⊥_id=6792 | &profile_id=41 | 11 | | | ß | ¢ . | æ | n 🕅 | V E | |
| | Bots > | DEEPAK WEBSITE | TEST>Settings | Bot Id : 6792 | | | | | | | | | T | test test@fe |
| + | | | | | lingual Pat | 0 | _ | - | | | | | | |
| n | 5 | Language | | | inigual bot | 0 | Engbled | | | | | | | |
| × | 18 | Auto Trigger | 3 | 2 | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | Blocklisting Uris | | Defau | lt Language | 0 | | | | | | | | |
| ٥ | | Whitelisting Urls | | Engli | sh | ~ | Save | | | | | | | |
| 9 | P | Consent Settings | | Add L | anguage 🛛 | | | | | | | | | |
| 2 ² | | Text to Speech Se | ettings | 5 se | lected | - | Save | | | | | | | |
| 0 | | Pot Active Timing | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| á | | not serve triing | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| A. | ۲ | Ban/Unban Users | : (Live Chat) | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | 5 | Enabled Devices | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | 0 | Whatsapp Restar | t Texts | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | Advanced Setting | js | | | | | | | | | | | |



Select your default language from the drop-down menu. Then, from the drop-down below, select the other languages you want to add to your bot.

Step 4:

Next, create a chatbot by following this guide.

*add image

| ıt | | × | + | | | | | | | | | | | | \sim | - | - | Ð |
|--------|---------------------|----------------|------------------------|---------------------|--------------|----------|-------------------|-----------------|------|---|-------------------|---|------------------------|---------|------------|------------|---------|---|
| с 🔒 | app.smat | bot.com | /bot?tab=setup | ⊥_id=6792&p | ofile_id=411 | | | | 12 ☆ | e | 88 [] | 9 🙀 | V | 16 | • | h = | 1 🗆 | |
| Bots > | DEEPAK W | EBSITE | TEST>Setup | | Vie | ew Setup | Flow Setup | Install | | | | | E | | est@f | eltso.c | om | • |
| N | tain Flow | | ~ + | | | | | Search | | ٩ | Eng Eng Arc | glish (De g <mark>lish (De</mark> Ibic - 1 | efault fault) لم | r) 🗸 | | ľ | Previev | N |
| | \sim | | Ask User | 2 | | | ➡ Action Based F | Flow | | | Bas Ber Bos | sque - Ei ngali - ৰা snian - b | uskan १:ना)äznē | a en | | | | |
| | ? Question | Single | Email | Multiple Choice | | | ? What is your na | ime | | | | | | - e | <u>_</u> , | Ō | Ð | |
| | - | | | - | | | | | | | | | | | U | ser's r | eply | |
| | Mobile Number | # Numbe | er Rating | Date Picker | | | • What is your g | ender? | | | | | | 1 | 4 | 0 | ٥ | |
| | O Time Picker | Locatio | n Range | rite Upload | | | | | | | | | | | U | ser's r | epty | |
| | • | - | | | | | C Enter your mob | ile number | | | | | | / | 4 | Ō | ۵ | |
| | Website | Ask | Order ts Items | Authentic | | | | | | | | | | | U | ser's r | eply | |
| | Form | Carous with | el Dynamic Question | Real Time Search | | | # How many bot | ts do you want? | | | | | | 1 | 4 | ۵ | Ô | |
| | - | | | | | | | | | | | | | | U | ser's r | eply | |

Step 5:

Once you are done setting up the bot in your default language, navigate to the second language flow and edit the flow.

Great! You are done making your bot multi-lingual.

Supported Languages. If you don't see the language of your choice here, please contact us at support@smatbot.com and we will custom develop the language capability for you.

| Language | Language Code |
|-----------|---------------|
| Arabic | ar |
| Basque | eu |
| Bengali | bn |
| Bosnian | bs |
| Brazilian | pt-BR |
| Bulgarian | bg |
| Catalan | са |
| Croatian | hr |
| Czech | CS |
| Danish | da |
| Dutch | nl |
| English | en |

| Estonian | et |
|------------|---------|
| Finnish | fi |
| French | fr |
| German | de |
| Greek | el |
| Gujarati | gu |
| Hebrew | he |
| Hindi | hi |
| Hungarian | hu |
| Indonesian | id |
| lrish | ga |
| Italian | it |
| Japanese | ja-Hani |

| Kannada | kn |
|------------|----|
| Korean | ko |
| Latvian | lv |
| Lithuanian | lt |
| Malayalam | ml |
| Maltese | mt |
| Marathi | mr |
| Mongolian | mn |
| Norwegian | no |
| Polish | pl |
| Portuguese | pt |
| Punjabi | ра |
| Romanian | ro |

| Russian | ru |
|---------------------|---------|
| Serbian | sr |
| Simplified Chinese | zh-Hans |
| Slovene | sl |
| Spanish | es |
| Swedish | SV |
| Tamil | ta |
| Telugu | te |
| Thai | th |
| Traditional Chinese | zh-Hant |
| Turkish | tr |
| Ukrainian | uk |
| Urdu | ur |
Vietnamese

• x

| 🙁 Sma | tBot × + | | | ×. |
|-------------------------------|------------------------------------|--|--|--|
| $\leftarrow \ \rightarrow $ | C app.smatbot.com/bot?tab=trigg | ers⊥_id=6792&profile_id=411 | | 🖻 🚖 📵 🎛 🗉 🗯 🔝 🏞 |
| | Bots > DEEPAK WEBSITE TEST>Trigger | 5 | | T test test@feits |
| + | | Main Flow - 1 selected | ✓ Save | |
| ۵ | Email Notification | | | |
| * (| SMS Notification | Enter up to 5 Email addresses (Sep example_2@smatbotl.com) | parate each with a comma E.g. example | esmatbol.com, |
| ٠ | S WhatsApp Notification | | fa Gamethat ann ¥ | mathet com W |
| 0 | Google Sheets | | Induction a linearchings | indubicom a |
| 9 | CRMs | | | |
| See | Topier integration | 2. Email View | | |
| 0 | Me zapier integration | You have Get a Regionar | Tou have Got a Reporter | You have Quite Provide |
| ដា | Webhook/Endpoint | Land From Highs Three analysis and Land Inviting - Management | Loud to a company of the second | URL : http://127.0.6.1:8680/ |
| | Email Follow-ups | Preidelle insulter : Dereffenger Vorgens frie | Protection : Charlenger, Voirgan, Jude | Lead From : http://127.0.0.1-6036/ |
| | S Pending Triggers | Ref. Ref. Ref. Ref. Ref. Ref. Ref. Ref. | Au Deer par sent | Probable Location : Abids, Telangano, India |
| | L | C Microsoft | 1000 1 dense, Harr Uniter, prior Tradigati (se Ladito) 20 1 dense, Visiona dense gistar mitiste number to sorrant for further dentitio. | For Complete shat view click hares • What is your name, steet • What is your gender? Male • Emeryour email - Info@testing.com |
| | | | AL-CONTRACTOR | 1 10 10 |

vi

Step 6

Installation.

• Video for website installation here



1. Click on the 'Install' section.

- 2. Select the platform of your choice and follow the specific instructions listed below.
 - a. Website/Blog
 - i. Whitelist your URLs i.e. type in your URL addresses where you want the bot to be active (E.g. <u>https://www.smatbot.com</u>)
 - ii. Copy and paste the code in the 'Header tag' of your website.

* post image here

- b. Instagram guide here.
- c. WhatsApp <u>guide here</u>.
- d. Messenger <u>guide here</u>.
- e. WordPress
 - i. Copy and paste the code in the 'Header tag' of your blog.
- f. Mobile App Please <u>contact us</u> for details.
- g. Landing Page
 - i. Navigate to the <u>link</u> (Nothing else is required)
- h. Wordpress guide here.
- i. Drupal guide here.

Install - Wordpress

• Add image

To install SmatBot on your WordPress hosted website, you will need to install a plugin first.

Installing Plugin:

- 1. Log in to your WordPress account.
- 2. Go to 'Plugins' > '**Add new'**.
- 3. Search for' Header and Footer Scripts'.
- 4. Click 'Install Now' and activate the plugin.



Installing SmatBot:

- 1. After the Plugin is installed, go to **Settings > Header and Footer Scripts.**
- 2. Next, in the Scripts in header section, copy the SmatBot installation code.
- 3. Click on 'Save Settings'.



SmatBot installation on your WordPress website is now complete. Great job!

Install - Drupal

• Add image

Step 1:

Go to the admin dashboard and click on the Extend section in the header.

Step 2:

Click on **Install new module** and copy this link and paste it in the **Install from URL** section. Next, click on **Install.**

• Add image



Step 3:

After successful installation, enable the Header and Footer module by navigating to the 'Extend' section, searching for the "Header and Footer" module and clicking on Install.

• Add image

| List Update Uninstall | |
|--|--|
| Home × Administration Download additional contributed modules to extend your | site's functionality. |
| Regularly review and instal available updates to maintain this and the second se | a secure and current site. Always run the update script each time a module is updated. |
| ▼ HFS | |
| Header and Footer Scripts | ▶ This plugin allows you to add the scripts and styles on overall site from the front-end. No need to open files and add them there. |
| Install | |
| | |

Step 4:

Navigate to the admin/config/development/header-and-footer-scripts/header path, and you will see a page that looks like this.

• Add image

| and you will see a page like th | 115. |
|---|--|
| | |
| ← → C △ O locahost/drupal/admin/config/development/header-and-footer-scripts/header | a 🗴 💩 🖩 隆 🔕 🚺 😁 |
| Q Back to site | |
| 🗎 Content 🚠 Structure 🔍 Appearance 🏟 Extend 🔧 Configuration 🛓 People 🕼 Reports 🚱 Help | de |
| Header Songra Body Songta Postar Songta Home a Administration a Configuration a Development | |
| 🖌 Vaur Settings have been saved | |
| AUD SCRIPTS AND STYLES IN HEADER | |
| Reader Spies whek rel="spiesteet" herf="kmps://sk.anzaosaas.com/socathor/files/on/thor.cos.gz%-cscript_tge="text/javastript" | ÷ |
| You can add multiple stylesheets here with multiple werk. For example: | |
| Ank type="textbass" rel="styleshest" http://www.asurple.com/style.cos" medue="dil" /s- | |
| 2. slink type="text/cut" of ="un/othert" hof="/un/o cut" media="alf" / σ | |
| 3anyles-theader color: grey: -alaryles- | |
| (a) dynamicsky statisticsky statisticsky statisticsky (2017) (| nf DV/1 other MuhaDin append Child Innan DV/, main DV/, dir Voland Inner Tran I natiographic Accurate Constantiation (Transport (Transport and Chinara market Transport (Transport Accurate Accurate Accurate Autoritation (Transport (Transpor |
| | |
| tos carato manpre sonpis rere with manpre ways, rer example. | |

Please copy the Header Styles and Header Scripts from SmatBot Dashboard -> Install -> **Drupal** Installation and paste it. Click on **Save Configuration**.

• Add image



Your installation is complete. SmatBot is now live on your website.

Chats and Messages

• Add image

1. Website/Landing page Chatbots

| Website Bot \mathcal{J} | Landing Page Bot γ |
|---|--|
| Smotbot Pelle, there! When to Smatteet: Image: Contract of the standing of the st | N To be media thankango (front : X Image: page-method care/harm-tells, found (phaloglad):1287 Image: Page-method care/harm-tells, found (phaloglad):1287 Image: Page-method care/harm-tells, found (phaloglad):1287 Image: Page-method care/harm-tells, found (phaloglad):1287 Image: Page-method care/harm-tells, found (phaloglad):1287 Image: Page-method care/harm-tells, found (phaloglad):1287 Image: Page-method care/harm-tells, found (phaloglad):1287 Image: Page-method care/harm-tells, found (phaloglad):1287 Image: Page-method care/harm-tells, found (phaloglad):1287 Image: Page-method care/harm-tells, found (phaloglad):1287 Image: Page-method care/harm-tells, found (phaloglad):1287 Image: Page-method care/harm-tells, found (phaloglad):1287 Image: Page-method care/harm-tells, found (phaloglad):1287 Image: Page-method care/harm-tells, found (phaloglad):1287 Image: Page-method care/harm-tells, found (phaloglad):1287 Image: Page-method care/harm-tells, found (phaloglad):1287 Image: Page-method care/harm-tells, found (phaloglad):1287 Image: Page-method care/harm-tells, found (phaloglad):1287 Image: Page-method care/harm-tells, found (phaloglad):1287 Image: Page-method care/harm-tells, found (phaloglad):1287 Image: Page-method care/harm-tells, found (phaloglad):1287 Image: Page-method care/harm-tells, found (phaloglad):1287 Image: Page-method care/harm-tells, found (phaloglad):1287 Image: Page-method (|
| Priversitility 🖬 SmotBet | E Choose From Menu |

- A visitor's first interaction with the bot is counted as one chat.
- When the same visitor revisits the bot, the bot provides the option to either 'Continue' or 'Start a New Conversation'.
- When a visitor selects 'Continue' the interaction is not counted again. If the visitor selects 'Start Again', the bot is refreshed and this interaction is counted as a new chat.

2. Messenger Chatbots

| 📟 SmatBot | × | | Sma | tBot 🗸 | | 3 | - × | G | Sm | atBot | ¥ | 8 | - x |
|--|---|---|--------------------------------|---|--|-----|-----|---|-----|-----------------|-------------------------|---------------------|-----|
| Get Started | | | Tha us. res We soo | anks for We try ponsive 'II get I on. | r messaging to be as e as possible, back to you | | * | | t t | Where to use | do you want smatbot? | prema Wh to u | |
| Welcome to SmatBot !! May I Know Your | | | Wo res a d | uld you erve a t emo? | u like to time slot for | | | | | | Website Mobile | 0 | |
| prema | | | | | Yes No | | I. | 0 | | v | WhatsApp | | |
| Welcome to S U ot II May I Know work Name? | | | | | | Yes | | | | | • | hi | - 1 |
| + 12 17 63 ha . (3) | | 0 | 1 | 57 GE | Aa | . 0 | 10 | 0 | | | a 🗛 | . 0 | 10 |

- A visitor's first interaction with the bot is counted as one chat.
- If the same visitor visits the bot without closing the initial chat, this interaction is counted as the same chat.
- If the same visitor deletes the conversation and revisits the chat, this interaction is counted as a new chat.

3. Whatsapp Chatbots

| 1212 Control of the second | USL# Column 2010/14 Column 2010/14 Column 2010/14 Image: Standard Standa | | J. J. Contraction of the second | |
|--|--|--|---|---|
| Greetings frc: 8.January 2022, as Help Desk! 2.Aopart 2022 (11:0) Minnu 11:0:0* Type Menu anytime to start from brighning (1:0) 1:00 Please type the number of the option you wish to choose. How much downgayment are you willing to pay? 1. About Us 2. Addust 3. Our Projects 4. CSR profile 5. Tak to Live Agent Type Menu anytime to start from beginning (1:0) Descent 3. Di Projects 4. CSR profile 5. Tak to Live Agent Type Menu anytime to start from beginning (1:0) Descent 3. Di Projects 4. CSR profile 5. Tak to Live Agent Type Menu anytime to start from beginning (1:0) Minnu 11:0:0* Minnu 11:0:0* What are you interested in learning about today? Di Breerent 3. Di Projects 4. CSR profile 5. Tak to Live Agent Type Menu anytime to start from beginning (1:0) Di Breerent 3. Di Projects 4. CSR profile 5. Tak to Live Agent Type Menu anytime to start from beginning (1:0) Di Breerent 3. Di Projects 4. CSR profile 5. Tak to Live Agent Type Menu anytime to start from beginning (1:0) Di Breerent 3. Di Projects 4. CSR profile 5. Tak to Live Agent Type Menu anytime to start from beginning (1:0) Di Breerent 3. Di Projects 4. CSR profile 5. Tak to Live Agent Type Menu anytime to start from beginning (1:0) Di Breerent 3. Di Projects 4. CSR profile 5. Tak to Di Live Agent Type Menu anytime to start from beginning (1:0) Di Bree trial - Website Just Browshing Around (1:0) Greetings from Modi Builders Help Minnu anytow your name Di Brow Help | Greetings frc 8-Jinuary 2022 as Help Desk! Type Menu anytime to start from beginning with to choose. What are you interested in learning about today? 1. About Us 2. Values 3. Cur Projects 4. CSR profile 5. Tak to a Live Are part Type Menu anytime to start from beginning with to choose. 1. About Us 2. Values 3. Cur Projects 4. CSR profile 5. Tak to a Live Are part Type Menu anytime to start from beginning with to choose. 10. January 2022 THERU 14.102 // Desk! (Interested in learning 3. Cur Projects 4. CSR profile 5. Tak to a Live Are part Type Menu anytime to start from beginning with to choose. (Interested in learning 3. Cur Projects 4. CSR profile 5. Tak to a Live Are part Type Menu anytime to start from beginning with to choose. (Interested in learning 3. Cur Projects 4. CSR profile 5. Tak to a Live Are part Type Menu anytime to start from beginning with to choose. (Interested in learning 5. Tak to a Live Are part Type Menu anytime to start from beginning with to choose. (Interested in learning) (Interested in learning 3. Cur Projects 4. CSR profile 5. Tak to a Live Are part Type Menu anytime to start from beginning with to choose. (Interested in learning) (Interested in learn | 1834 ∰ %-38.4994 € € 😎 Modi Builders % : | 1834 ∰ %-M.#/E.# 9P%∎ ← 🐖 PEARL YAMANA * : | 1834 %-38.432.4 99∿∎ ← 💇 SmatBot : |
| Type Menu anytime to start from brighting to pay? Please type the number of the number of the pay of the pay of the pay? Please type the number of the pay of the pay? Please type the number of the pay? About Us 2. About Us 2. Adues 3. Our Projects 4. CSR profile 5. Tak to a live Agent Type Menu anytime to start from brighting to pay? 10. January 2022 TBRU 1420 wr Orderings from Modi Builders Help | Fype Menu anytime to start from Brease type the number of the option you wish to choose.* What are you interested in learning about today? 1. About Us 2. About Us 3. Our Projects 3. Gur Projects 3. Gar Projects 3. Gar Projects 3. Gar Projects 1. About Us 2. About Us 2. About Us 2. About Us 3. Our Projects 3. Gar Projects 3. Gar Projects 1. About Us 2. About Us 2. About Us 2. About Us 3. Our Projects 4. GSR profile 5. Tak to a laway atom 10. January 2022 Meru 11622.00 Or Message Q: Message Q: Message | Greetings fr. ^{8 January 2022} Irs Help Desk! | 2 August 2022 (1.06) Please type the number of the option you wish to choose. | Menu 11:56-07 |
| What are you interested in learning about today? 1. About US 2. Values 2. Values 3. 15 percent 2. Values 3. 15 percent 2. Solution 3. 15 percent 3. 15 percent | What are you interested in learning about today? 1. About Us 2. Values 2. Values 3. Our Projects 4. CSP projects 4. Start of Live Agent Type Menu writere to start from beginning 10. January 2022 menu 1:82.00 Welcome to Pearl Yamaba smetchat@ May Lince your manue 0. Seesings from Modi Builders Help Dedki 0 Message 0 Message 0 Message 0 Message | Type Menu anytime to start from beginning 10.49 Please type the number of the option you wish to choose.* | How much downpayment are you willing to pay? | |
| 2. Values 3. Our Properts 4. CSR profile 5. Talk to a Live Agent Type Menu anytime to start from beginning 10.5 anuary 2023 | 1135 | What are you interested in learning about today? | 2. 30 percent 21.06 26 August 2022 | Hello, there! Welcome to SmatBot! |
| Type Menu anytime to start from beginning 18.50 10 January 2022 Menu 14.02 or Smatchate Greetings from Modil Builders Help Mexic Menu 19.60 Mexic Mexic | Type Menu anytime to start from beginning 18 50 10 January 2022 MENU 14 30 - w Menu 14 30 - w Welcome to Pearl Yamaha smatchate Greetings from Modi Builders Help w Desk! Base @ Message S @ Message S | 2. Values 3. Cur Projects 4. CSR profile 5. Talk to a Live Agent | | What would you like to do? 11:55 Book a Demo |
| menu 14.82 w Welcome to Pearl Yamaha Yinte wold you like to do? Greetings from Modi Builders Help Meru Inexe your name. | menu 14 92 w Welcome to Pearl Yamaha SmetChate Yinter would you like to do? Greetings from Modi Builders Help Desk! Image: Comparison of the second sec | Type Menu anytime to start from beginning 18.00 | | Free trial - Website Just Browsing Around SmatRet |
| They what would you like to | Deskt Tazz Tazz @ Message % @ Message % @ Message | menu 14 02 4/ | Welcome to Pearl Yamaha SmatChateo May I know your name. | What would you like to do? Just Browsing Around 11.96 or |

- Please refer to a detailed guide on WhatsApp chats & billing here.

4. Instagram Chatbots



Lead Generation Vs Customer Support Bots

Navigation

1. We observed that users wanted to navigate between the questions when they are trying to solve queries using the customer support chatbot. You can see an example of this below .Difference: In our regular chatbot, a user will not be able to go back and choose a different set of queries. However, in a customer support chatbot a user can always switch between the options and go back and forth between the flow easily.



Analytics:

1. All the numbers and statistics needed to analyze every aspect of your customer support bot will be at your fingertips. Some examples include, answer level feedback, overall chat session feedback and number of support tickets created.Difference: Our regular chatbot shows analytics that are relevant to lead generation which are significantly different from those we offer in our customer support chatbot.

| Smat | Sot × + | | | | | | × | - ¤ × |
|-------------------|-------------------------------------|----------------------------|---------------------|------------------------------|-------------------|---------------------|--------------------------|----------|
| \leftrightarrow | C app.smatbot.com/bot | ?bot_id=5766&profile_id=11 | &ttab=analytics | | Q | ie 🖈 😗 🗷 🖯 | . 🕷 🔍 🖬 👌 🗯 | I 🛛 🔹 : |
| M AliMai | Enterprise E 💶 🌣 Settings | 🎫 ccbp 🧿 Online Logo Ma | iker 🔕 Alibaba Mail | 🕲 🞯 🌚 smatbot mai | 🔺 doodleblue 🔛 fe | itso 🔇 🥚 sJ image | 🔯 Loan Vector Images | 30 |
| 8 | Bots > Support>Analytics | | | | | | SmatBot info@ematbot/ | com • • |
| + | Bot Chot Analytics 🗸 | All 🗸 2 | 022-08-08 - 2022 | View | | | Location Based Analy: 🛩 | * |
| | Visitors | Unique | 1.00 | Tickets | Total | | User Satisfaction | |
| * | 575 | 102 | | Generated 19 | 176 | | 0% | |
| ۲ | Appointments | Interaction | | Ticket Generation | Positive | | Negative | |
| 9 | Booked 28 | 18% | dit | 19% | Feedback 0 | 14 | Feedback 0 | * |
| 22 | r | | | | | | | |
| 0/ | Business Initiated Conversations | O Conversations | 0 | Whatsapp Session Messages | 0 | | | |
| রা | 0 | 0 | | 0 | | | | |
| di | | | 1.1 | | | | | |
| | Daily Tickets | | Overall Ses | ssion Ratings | | Visitors Timing cho | art | |
| | 4 | • | | | | 86 | | essions |
| | | | | | | 30 | | |

Apart from these two significant differences, we've also added some other features to make the customer support bot more effective.

Feedback:

1. We will be asking your users for feedback when the bot answers users' first question by default. It can help you understand your bot's overall performance and help better serve your users.



User satisfaction scores for bot answers:

1. Every time the bot answers a question, SmatBot collects feedback from the user regarding that answer which can help you alter your bot for increased customer satisfaction.



3. Integrations (outer section)

Zapier Integration

Add video



Step 1:

Login to your Smatbot Account.

From the dashboard, select the bot you wish to integrate with Zapier.

Select **Triggers** from the left side panel.

Step 2 :

Choose **Zapier Integration** and Copy the **Zapier Key**.

| 🖭 Sma | tBot × + | | ✓ – σ × |
|---------------------------------|-------------------------------------|--|---|
| \leftrightarrow \rightarrow | C app.smatbot.com/bot?tab=trigg | ers⊥_id=6792&profile_id=411 | 역 년 ☆ 🐵 🗷 📜 🖲 💩 🏞 🖬 🔕 : |
| M AlMa | il Enterprise E 😰 🏟 Settings 🐃 ocbp | 🖸 Online Logo Maker 🚱 Alibaba Mail 🚱 😁 🌚 smatbot mail | 🛦 doodleblue 📓 feltso 🔇 🌻 s3 image 🔀 Loan Vector Images 🛛 🛪 |
| | Bots > DEEPAK WEBSITE TEST>Triggers | | test gfeltes.com |
| + | | Main Flow v 4 selected • Save | |
| Ô | Email Notification | Zapier Subscriptions Available for your current plan : 2 (| llett) a |
| * | SMS Notification | Note: Push your chat data using Zapier to 1000+ Apps. | \sim |
| | S WhatsApp Notification | Zapler Key | h38o47HuGGKwvPI |
| 0 | Google Sheets | | |
| 9 | CRMs | | |
| 2 ¹⁰ | * zapier Integration | 1 | |
| ٥ | Webbook/Endpoint | - | |
| র্না | 4 | | |
| * | Email Hollow-ups | | |
| | Pending Triggers | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |

Step 3:

Now, login to your Zapier account and proceed by opening this link.

Your Zapier Dashboard appears once you log in.

Step 4:

Click on **Create a Zap** and search for **SmatBot** to create a Trigger & proceed.



Step 5:'

Click on **New Lead** and then **continue**.

Proceed to connect your SmatBot Account.

Step 6:

Enter the **Zapier key** you copied from your SmatBot account and click on **continue** to connect.



Step 7:

Select the bot you need to integrate Zapier with.

| Interprox I. 😐 🏮 1 | ellege E. soly 👩 Onless Links. 🚷 Altana find 🔕 🛞 🎰 conduct out 🔺 deschetore 🛽 | 🛛 bilao 🐧 🧶 shimaya 🔀 saan Vestar Imaga | | | | |
|--|---|--|---|---|--|---------------------------|
| - seal | zapier | | First | | | |
| | an I- Trape | | A 84 | | | |
| | 1. New Lead in smatbot | | i ovi | | | |
| | Choose app 5 event | • | 0 | Choose abb |), even [.] | τ |
| | 88 Snatlet Res Cha | mge | da net | | | - |
| | Treat (marked) | | Di Dett | | a and | |
| | Hextnot | 0 | | and trigger | s and | |
| | Net Call | | | 00 | | |
| | | - | | aliak Contir | | |
| | - Choese account | • | | | iue. | |
| | + | | | | | |
| | | | | | | |
| e. C # spiercowie | | | Σ | Emerication A | 10 4 10 0 1 | 7 N T D A A |
| et C & apperconto Integration & 0 & 1 Read Zag of Head | A subsition to profit 2.20 performs after them Section 1.20 performs Section 1.20 perform Section 1.20 performs Section 1.20 perform Section 1 | Non- State of the state of t | > A > A > A > A H Col | | N N D N N N N N | |
| nt C a pojerzania Dimyres L C C a C Read Zag r reaser | A subsition in a losse in a set of the | | | | N N (2 0 0 0 + andrie 1 10 0 N N (2 0 0 0 0 - 0 0 - 0 0 - 0 | |
| er C i pojekovalj Interpret La i C i Read Zap / - | Process or come to perform der non Process or come to Proces | | | | N N 10 0 0 0 0 0 | |
| er. C i appiersen hi Integrat L. i C i C stad Zap / -saat | * Parales is receive 20 performa den mon | | | | N A di K • X cri & Andre II to & | |
| er C (Lapperanti) Interpreter Lapperanti Lapperanti Lapperanti | Paratics is reported by performand on more Paratics is an even to be performed on more Paratics is an even to be | | | | 10 5 12 0 0 0 0 cri 4 antific 2 50 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 | |
| er C C Deperative Interpretation Carel Exp - - | Process of a construction of the performance of the construction Process of the construction of the construction Process Process of the construction Process of the construct | | | | N (1, 1) (1 (1 (1 (1 (1 (1 (1 (1 (1 (1 (1 (1 (1 | |
| er Gold Bangeronnin Kref Zap / | A de la de la conserva de la maiore de | | | | N R dd 8 0 0 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 | |
| or C (∎approximit Innerna L (⊕) ⊂ (⊂ Contact L () ⊂ Contact L () ⊂ () ⊂ Contact L () ⊂ () ⊂ Contact L () ⊂ () ⊂ | A de la de la de la de la periora de la nor Anticipation de la de la devine devine de la devine devine de la devine devine devine de la devine devine devine de la devine devi | | | Consecutive C | NO S. 10 D S TON CONTROL 1 | |
| a 3 ∎ Belenanik Maryan k. @ 0 Cal Part / | Provide class Provide | | | Conservation | | Constraints |

You can test the trigger.



Step 8:

| far 🛛 🖌 📕 Geller Dy (Dyne 🛛 🖌 | • | · - 6 | Siz x Bornie Zapilane X + | |
|---|--|------------------|--|--|
| C = september/1672457754945167249774(setup Floerpier). • () feetings in cdp () Orientogoldeler. () | 🕷 🔍 🕁 😭 🗶 anabornal 🛦 cooldere 📓 🚳 🕹 drauge 🕽 | 12 🖬 🖗 🖬 🌢 🕭 🖬 1 | C • Dependent of the set of t | 🛦 skoslaktur 📓 beker 🔕 🧶 ul mage 🔀 Laan Verber Images. |
| filled Zap / I-aitans/hurrap | _zapier | Family | r take | |
| - I - Trease | | A 200 | · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · | |
| 1. New Lead in Smat | Bot | ≡ 0#8 | Action 2. Send Direct Message in Slack | |
| | ۲ | 0 0#1 | Choose app & event | • |
| 2. Action | enform electronic Learnerse | () Han | (1 m | |
| | | Di Deta | 10 SIG | Crange |
| Co concerning in an app | Radio-in toxis try one of sur built-in actions | | Send (Hopered) Send (History Message) | 0 |
| () ai | Arth Table off-view clock for off-sevil | | This is participant units the bajo site. | |
| © Back | * | | Continue | |
| San Translate by Zapler | Printer animitant for a contain concent of form | | < Choose ecount | • |
| Forme for Block Bala | 77.00 | | + | |
| Staty Pavalato Bern | Cons. present when a providin by | | | |

Move on to the **Action** tab and set up the action you need.

Choose the app you wish to connect and set up 'App Action' accordingly.

As an example, we've set up a slack direct message.

Step 9:

Now connect your Slack Account.

Enable all the settings.

Sing in to the preferred channel and click on allow to access the required workspace

| | | A sue | * | | 1 |
|--|---|---------|---|--------|---|
| I. New Load in SmatBot | o | i E out | - Action | | |
| ۲ | | () an | Choose app & event | | |
| 2. Action | Learn more | () Hat: | | | |
| An action is an event a Zap performs after it stor | ·• | C See | and the second | Charge | |
| App event to canatring in an app | Built-In tents Try and of our truit-in actions | e pera | Event (implied) Send Direct Mexicopi | | |
| ्रज्य 📀 | In ma | | This is partners as a set of a logic scale. | | |
| () SHORE | nille | | Continue | | |
| 🍓 Teominto by Zapier | Parties for a constant | | Chesse acceute | | |
| Termeder Glock Date | arrest of the | | + | | |
| Casylanchia des | Cole process where a consistion is | | | | |
| | | | | | |

Step 10:

Provide the username and the message you want to send them.

Choose your bot name, icon, image URL's, and the time at which the message needs to be sent.

In your bot, you can select a question that triggers a zap when a visitor answers it.



Step 11:

You can test & publish the Zap.

Your Zap is now created!

| SmatBot | 🗙 📃 Home My Zaps Zapier | × + | | | | | | ✓ – σ > |
|---------------------------------|-------------------------------|---------------------|---|--|-----------------------|-----------------|--------------|--------------|
| ← → C ≜ zapier.com/a | pp/zaps | | | | Q, je | 9 🏠 😁 🖽 🗄 | r 🕱 🖲 I | 8 👌 🛪 🖘 🖬 🔕 |
| M AliMail Enterprise E 💿 🌣 | Settings 🛎 ccbp 🧿 Online Logo | Maker 🔇 Alii | baba Mail 🔇 😚 🤮 | smatbot mail 🔺 | doodleblue 🙎 feit | so 🔇 🌻 s3 image | 👿 Loan Vecto | or Images > |
| | You have | a 13 days to try Za | Welcome to you apier's <u>paid features</u> . Up | r Professional triall ograde anytime for a | is low as \$19.99 USD | /month. | | |
| × _zapier | | | | | | | | ۵ م |
| + Create Zap | Zaps | | Home | | | | | |
| Dashboard | ,O Search Zaps | | | | | | ` | + Create Zap |
| 🔶 Zaps | Private folders | | | Name | Owner | Warnings | Last edit | Running |
| ₽ Transfers | Home | 9 | | Untitled Zap | abhijith b. | No warnings | Just now | On 🌒 |
| H My Apps | 🗍 Trash | 0 | - | Untitled Zap | abhijith b. | No warnings | 26m ago | (10 |
| Zap History | | | | | | | | |
| Free Plan | | | | | | | | |
| Tasks 0 / 1,000 | | | | | | | | |
| Zaps Unlimited | | | | | | | | |
| Monthly usage resets in 29 days | | | | | | | | |

Adwords Integration

Step 1:

Navigate to your <u>Adwords account</u> > Tools > Conversions.

| 🔥 Over | rview - SmatBot - Google Ad: 🗙 | + | | | | ~ - Ø × |
|---------|--------------------------------|---------------------------|---------------------------------|----------------------------|----------------------------------|-------------------------|
| ÷ → | C ads.google.com/ | aw/overview?c | | | - e 🛧 😋 🔇 | S 🕙 🔟 U 💩 🗯 🖬 🔕 : |
| 20 Cu | istomer Servic M Gmail 🗖 | 🛚 YouTube 🐰 Maps 🦈 Keywon | d Generator 🔀 Free Email Signat | ur 🔘 SEO - Bounce page 🔸 I | Page Speed Issues 🔥 Google Ads 🕚 | WhatsApp Ads: Ho >>> |
| = (| 🔨 Google Ads | All campaigns | | C III BEARCH REPORTS | TOOLE AND REFREEH HELP NOTEN | CATTORNS S |
| 0 | 🖹 Planning | I Shared Library | 6 Bulk Actions | Measurement | @ Setup | Billing > |
| Re | Performance Planner | Audience manager | All bulk actions | Conversions | Business data | Summary |
| Ca P | Keyword Planner | Bid strategies | Rules | Google Analytics | Policy manager | Transactions |
| Ac F | Reach Planner | Negative keyword lists | Scripts | Attribution | Access and security | Documents |
| Ac | Ad Preview and Diagnosis | Shared budgets | Uploads | | Linked accounts | Promotions |
| · Vik | App advertising hub | Location groups | | | Google tag | Settings |
| ке | | Placement exclusion lists | | | Preferences | Advertiser verification |
| AL | | Asset library | | | Google Merchant Center | |
| Settion | ns | | | | | |
| | 9- | 0 00 | | | 23 0.00 | < 1/9 > |

Click on the '+New Conversion Action'.

| | atBot - G 🗙 | + | | | | | | × - | a × |
|--------------------|--------------|----------------------------|------------------------------|--------------------|-----------------|------------------|--------------------------|-----------------------------|--------|
| ← → ♂ (iii ads. | google.com/a | w/conversior | a freezes, a | | | <i>É</i> | x 🙂 🕼 | s 🕲 🔟 😐 🗯 E | 1 🚯 🗄 |
| 20 Customer Servic | M Gmail 💶 | YouTube 😢 Maps 🤨 Keyword G | ienerator 🚺 Free Email Sig | inatur 🚫 SEO - Bou | nce page 🛛 🔶 Pa | age Speed Issues | 🔥 Google Ads 🕚 | WhatsApp Ads: Ho | 39 |
| 🔶 🔥 Googl | e Ads | Conversions | | Q | | TOOLS AND BER | C 🕜 1 | P. ANDRE | S |
| Summary | Sumn | nary | | | | | Cust | om 13 Sept 2022 👻 🗸 | \sim |
| Settings | | | | | | | | | |
| Uploads | 0 | + New conversion action | | | | | | View all conversion actions | |
| Value rules | ie rules | | | | | | | | |
| Custom variables | | | account-default goal 33 of a | is campaigns | | | | Edit goal | |
| Palasfaraa | | Conversion action | Action optimisation $~\psi$ | Conversion source | All conv. | All conv. value | Status | Actions | |
| Galestore | | Request demo/Contact us | Primary | Website | 0.00 | 0.00 | Recording conversions | | |
| | | Submit lead form WhatsApp | Primary | Website | 0.00 | 0.00 | Tag inactive | Troubleshooting | |
| | | vension conversions | Primary | Website | 0.00 | 0.00 | Tag inactive | Troubleshooting | |
| | | | | · · · | | | , | 1 - 3 of 3 | |
| | | Sign-ups Account-defa | ult goal 33 of 35 campaign | 9 | | | | Edit goal | |
| | | Conversion action | Action optimisation _L | Conversion source | All conv. | All conv. value | Status | Actions | |

1. Click on Website conversion.

2. Enter the URL of the website to be measured.

3 Choose a category to set up a conversion goal. For example, select **Sign-up** and match type as **URL starts with** and enter the URL, and click on **Add**.

4. You can choose to add a conversion action manually.

5. Add the **Goal & Conversion Name** as Sign-up. You can choose the conversion's value. Select the count to see the number of conversions per click. Once updated, click **Save** and **Continue**.

| Google Ads New convension action | Santa anala Santa Carlana | 🔥 Google Ads 🗌 New conv | ension action 🔒 🗒 | |
|---|--|--|--|---|
| Start tracking conversions | | lid coversion actions 😧 Out | Indexellum and Pride | |
| Conversion tracking is critical to accessful online mailotting. It lets you see what are conversion action at a time, but you can track multiple conversion actions at | t people dis - the conversion actions they take - after seeing your ad. You set up on a. Learninger | Enser the U21 for the automa | a characteristic reasons to reason a second removable | |
| Solect the kind of conversions that you want to the $k, {\mathfrak A}$ | | | | |
| Vidulto App | Phone calls Import | Soa wing yeer website will det to measure conversions on yo | termine if it's already set up to measure conversions. Yes may also see suggestions for conve or reducte. | ration autions that you can create |
| | Co C | Were a | Even | |
| | and that source | | | |
| | | Save and continue Cancel | | |
| | | | | |
| | | | | |
| | | 2671 | | |
| n | | | | |
| · | | | | |
| | | | | |
| - Gogle Ale 🔹 💽 Standard, Al Dankar Kratingar, 🔹 🔺 | v - | der-Geografie 🔹 💌 Jauder de | Same tradyor \star 🕴 | V - |
| - Copp ter • (2) Faller al Material par • (3) • A support particular construction of SCOTT Matchine 4000, METRO Terror Particular Terror (1) | solutions,contrassectors, p ≥ 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 | der-Gospise • 3 Innere (4) C • Adaptive (5 - 10 - 10 - 10 - 10 - 10 - 10 - 10 - 1 | Salas trainin : ■ ■ Antonio Statistica Antonio (Statistica Constanting Statistica Constanting Statistica Constanting & | о о о о о о о и о о и и д округа с Умалулань. |
| - Corp. No. | | der-despiser • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • | talen agen a 4 anteo 2003 setto da (1999 2 torres de 2004 (1007 the de 1903 t. De Marcel Talen (1007 t.) De torres φ = 4 replace to orverion action defails | 2 D D D D D D D D D D D D D D D D D D D |
| Coopt see Coopt see Coopt see Coopt see Coopt see Coopt see Coopt set | an-I-Matterian and Tables, and a second a second a second a Second and a second a Second a second a se | ato-Segura (Constantino) de la dispersione constantino de la dise desertores. No tour de la data de la dise (Constantino de la dise de la dise de la diseace de la dis | Secondary and a second s | 2 — 0 2 — 0 — 0 — 0 — 0 — 0 — 0 — 0 4 — А Панур Лас — С УМалур Ласти. |
| Conjunt C | Herbitations South Herbitation & Ball | Alto-Copy to Copy Copy Copy Copy Copy Copy Copy Cop | Benerous pro | 2 D C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C |
| - Copy to | eventedative constructions of the sector state | Alto-Chapter | Interview, • • • when the second sec | 2 D C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C |
| - Cognis | verifications, contributions of the line of the l | en-chapter • Contact Contacters for the contacters of Concepts Adv Management and and Construction | | 2 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 |
| - Groups - - - - - - - - - - - - - | the second control of the second contro | en-degen | | O O |
| Coope Address of the second seco | ex-conductory, conductory and the set of the | eto-degeles • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • | beneficial and a set of the | Comparing the second seco |
| Company Co | te de la del la des la del del del la del l | Alto-Corporation (Corporational Corporation) | Announce 4 A A | C C C C C C C C |
| | | Alter-Corpera Alter Fores. No two - Poster of Alter Fores. No two - Poster of Constructions | | Constant Constan |
| Any at | | etro-chapter Concept Adv Concept Adv Concept Adv Concept Concept Concept Concept Concept Concept Concept Concept Concept Concept Concept Concept Concept Concept Co | | A Despring To State of the |

Step 4

Select the framework that your website code uses. As an example, HTML was selected. You can also add the conversions manually.

| Fridestein | | |
|------------------------------------|---|--|
| Create conversion actions ma | nually using code | |
| ••• | Set up conversion actions manually: • If you use transaction specific values, transaction IDs and/or other custom • If you want to measure clicks on buttons or links. If you choose this option, you'll need to add an event snippet to your website code | |
| + Add a conversion action manually | | |

In the event snippet, select 'Click'. Copy the snippet code and paste it in the header section of your website.

| SmatBot - Google Ads X | + | ~ | - | • × |
|---|---|----------------------------|---------------------------|-------------|
| → C 🔒 ads.google.com/ 20 Customer Servic M Gmail C | w/conversion 5 😥 🏠 😨 🔊 🗞 4 I YouTube 👯 Maps 🖜 Keyword Generator 🔯 Free Email Signatur 🔿 SEO - Bounce page 🥠 Page Speed Issues 🙏 Google Ads. 👐 Wh | 🕑 🔟 U 🤞 NatsApp Ads: Ho | * • | i 🚺 i ** |
| X A Good Conversi Together wil | n event snippet for 'Sign-up' the Google tag, this tag sends data to Google Ads and indicates when a conversion happens | 191-119- | 7941 SmatB I4@gmail.co | ot (S) |
| <i>م</i> ر | Page kad Add the snippet to the page that a customer reaches after completing a conversion Click Add the snippet to the page that has a button or a link that you'd like to track for clicks Copy the snippet below and pasts it in between the chead-t/head-tags of the page(s) that you'd like to track, right after the Goo Then, call gtag_report_conversion when someone clicks on the chosen link or button. | gle tag. | | |
| | Copy Download | Close | | |



Go to the SmatBot dashboard and enable AdWords conversion in the settings page of the bot.

Note : Please note that AdWords Conversion Tracking only works for bots installed on your website and not on other platforms.

Freshdesk / Freshsales Integration

Step 1:

Login into Smatbot and open your Bot.

Step 2

Go to **Triggers** and navigate to the **CRM integration** section.



Select Freshdesk or Freshsales from the listed CRMs and click on Connect your Account.





In the popup window, type in your Freshdesk/Freshsales domain name and the generated API key that you can find in your profile settings in Freshdesk/Freshsales and click **Continue.**.

| Su Su | nalitot × + | | | | | | | | | | |
|----------------|---|---|------------|---|---------|----------|--------------|------|---------------------|-----|---|
| () | C @ app.smatbot.com/bot?bot_id=679 | 92&profile_id=411&tab=triggers | QB | * | • | E T | X | 1 | 8 * 0 | 0 | |
| M Alb | Mail Enterprise E 💶 🏟 Settings 🐃 ccbp 🌘 | 🕽 Online Logo Maker 😵 Alibaba Mail 😵 🧐 🎯 smatbot mail 🔺 doodleblue | 🖻 feltso 🚱 | | 3 image | 💆 La | an Vector Im | ages | | | , |
| | Bots > DEEPAK WEBSITE TEST>Triggers | SmatBot - Google Chrome | | _ | | x | Т | tes | st st@feltso.com | • • | |
| | | app.smatbot.com/crm-connect?crm=freshdesk&chatbot_id=6792 | | | | Q | - | | - | | |
| + | | _ | | | | | | | | | |
| Ô | Email Notification | $\mathbf{\Omega}$ | | | | | | | | | |
| × | SMS Notification | | | | | | | | | | |
| | S WhatsApp Notification | Allow SmatBot to access your FreshDesk Account? | | | | | | | | | |
| 0 | Google Sheets | | | | | | | | | | |
| 0 | | Subdomain * | | | | | | | | | |
| 22 | CRM8 | This is your registered domain name our reshdesk.com. | | | | | | | | | |
| 0 | * Zapier Integration | https:// /reshdesk.com | | | | | | | | | |
| - | Webhook/Endpoint | ADI Key * | | | | | | | | | |
| ai | Emoil Follow-ups | Log in to https://0.freshdesk.com, Click on your Profile Picture on the | | | | | | | | | |
| - | Rending Triggers | top right and select "Profile Settings" In the sidebar, you will find the API Key Copy-paste this key. | | | | | | | | | |
| | Contraction (1993) and | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | Continue | | | 6 | 2) | | | | | 1 |
| | | | | | | <u> </u> | | | | (-9 | 2 |

To get your Freshdesk/Freshsales API key, go to your Freshdesk/Freshsales account => Profile settings => Click on **Generate API key** in the top right corner of your profile settings.

| SmatBot X SmatBot Al Chatbot for all | y 🗙 📘 Help Guide Corrections - Goi 🗴 🕴 🕻 | 🗙 Business Manager 🛛 🗙 👩 Profile set | ttings : SURYA PRIV 🗙 | + ~ | - 6 | ٥ |
|---|--|---|---|------------------------------|----------|---|
| ← → C | s/89000970974/edit Logo Maker 🔗 Albaba Mail 🔗 🤭 🖉 |) smatbot mail 🔺 doodleblue 📴 feltso 📀 | ☆ 🕝 태 🝸 | 🐹 🐨 🕵 💩 can Vector Images | * 🗆 | 0 |
| A abhijith bhargav designermoneywow @gmail.com Edit Profile Logout | Your trial ends in 2 days Subs | cribe Recommended features 🕖 | New - | arch 🗘 🍄 | -# C | 9 |
| Freshworks Customize https://designermoneywow.myfreshworks.com | er portal will not be accessible. | | | | | × |
| 🖸 Users 🛆 Security 📾 Audit Logs | Current D | - Francisco | | | | |
| Users Ascounts Wy Accounts Wy Accounts Greshdesk Support Desk + Add SURYA PRIVATE LIMITED suryaprivatelimited.freshdesk.com | Current Pl Urgent! You deactivated after the trial period. To co | lan : Enterprise ur trial has expired! ontinue using Freshdesk Support Desk, plea | se choose a plan bel | ow. | | |
| Uters Audit Logs My Accounts My Accounts My Accounts Freshdesk Support Desk SURYA PRIVATE UMITED suryaprivatelimited.freshdesk.com Would you like to meve accounts from another organization here? Here? | Current Pl Urgent! You deactivated after the trial period. To co | lan : Enterprise ur trial has expired! ontinue using Freshdesk Support Desk, plea | se choose a plan bel | ow. Currency | : USD ¥ | |
| ☑ Uses: Audit Logs My Accounts: • Audit Logs ● Freehdesk Support Desk • Add ● SURYA PRIVATE LIMITED • SURYA PRIVATE LIMITED • Suryaprivatelimited.freshdesk.com • Move Accounts ● Would you like to meve accounts from another organization here? • Move Accounts ● Nove Accounts ● | Current P Urgent You deactivated after the trial period. To co | lan : Enterprise Ir trial has expired! ontinue using Freshdesk Support Desk, pleas reptional customer service on site. Available fro | se choose a plan bel m Growth onwards. | ow. Currency | r: uso ↓ | |
| West Audit Logs My Accounts | deactivated after the trial period. To co | Ian : Enterprise ur trial has expired! ontinue using Freshdesk Support Desk, pleas eptional customer service on site. Available fro Pro | se choose a plan bel m Growth onwards. Enterpris | ow. Currency | ': USD ¥ | |

- Next, select the Action **Create new ticket** or **Create new contact** based on your requirement and click on **Continue**

- SmatBot will now import all the fields related to that action.



Step 6

Now, fill the fields with bot question types (listed below) to assign values to your Freshdesk/Freshsales tickets or contacts

Field types:

Question: Use the response made to a specific question in SmatBot to fill a field in your CRM. E.g: To fill the mobile number field in Freshdesk/Freshsales CRM, select the question where the user enters their mobile number.

Step 5

Static Text: Fill in a field in your CRM that needs to be set to a default/preset value using static text.

Data Composition: Assign multiple questions, static fields or a combination of both these to a single field in your CRM.

Email: When a user enters their email in any one of the flows, the email will be pushed to your CRM.

Once you finish setting up all the fields, click on **continue**. **Note:** Fields marked as * are mandatory to fill out for the CRM.

Step 7

Now that your setup is complete, give it a name and click on **Save**.

| 🕿 Sm | natBot X 😨 Profile settings : SL | JRVA PRIVATE X + V - D > |
|-------------------|--|---|
| \leftrightarrow | C app.smatbot.com/bot?bot_id=6792&p | rofile_id=411&tab=triggers Q 🔄 🛠 😗 🔢 👌 🗯 🔲 🔕 |
| M AliM | Mail Enterprise E 😰 🏟 Settings 📼 ccbp 🧿 Or | nline Logo Maker 🤣 Albaba Mail 🥝 🮯 🎡 smatbot mail 🔺 doodleblue 📔 feltso 🚱 🌼 s3 image 👿 Loan Vector Images 🤉 |
| | Bots > DEEPAK WEBSITE TEST>Triggers | test testgelettes com |
| + | | Mills Flow y Teclantari - Smis |
| 0 | Email Natification | Nou house a successfully submitted the fields. Nou eliek on Test hutten to aback |
| 1.0 | | Four nove souccessionly submitted one neros, www.click.on Test botton to check |
| 2 | SMS Notification | Nome your integration |
| * | S WhatsApp Notification | Please give your Integration a name |
| 0 | Google Sheets | Deepaktest Save |
| 9 | CRMs | |
| 25 | | |
| 0 | Se Zapier Integration | ning duar consider |
| - | Webhook/Endpoint | This CRM will work only when |
| | 🖆 Email Follow-ups | Main Flow V Select a question V Select an answer V |
| a | Pending Triggers | Save |
| | | Test your Integration |
| | | |

Step 8

Select the condition to trigger the integration and push data to your CRM

Note: Leave this blank if you don't have any such conditions.

You can test the integration by clicking on the '**Test**' button below. Click on **finish** to complete the setup.

| 🙁 Sma | atBot × 😗 Profile settings | SURYA PRIVATE | + | | | | | | V | <u> 21</u> | ۵ | × |
|-------------------------------|--|-----------------------|-----------------------|-----------------------------|--------------|------------|--------|-------------|---------------|-------------|-----|-----|
| $\leftrightarrow \rightarrow$ | C app.smatbot.com/bot?bot_id=6792 | &profile_id=411&ttab= | triggers | | QE | ☆ © | H T | * T | 53 | * | . 0 |) : |
| M AIM | ail Enterprise E 🖸 💠 Settings 🕮 ocbp 🧿 | Online Logo Maker | 🛇 Alibaba Mail 🚱 😽 | 🙆 smatbot mail 🔺 doodleblue | e 📓 feitso 📀 | 😝 s3 imag | e 🗹 Lo | an Vector I | mages | | | 33 |
| | Bots > DEEPAK WEBSITE TEST>Triggers | | | | | | | T | test testg | eleitso con | • | * |
| + | | Main Flow | v 1 selected | - Save | | | | | | | | |
| Ô | Email Notification | | | | | | | | | | | |
| × | SMS Notification | | Event - create_ticket | | | | Test | | | | | |
| | S WhatsApp Notification | _ <u>∕</u> | | | | | | | | | | |
| ٥ | Google Sheets | | name | test | | | | | | | | |
| 9 | CRMs | | email | 9127580151 | | | | | | | | |
| ž ^p a | * Zanice Integration | | phone | OptionI | | | | | | | | |
| 0 | A zoper megranon | | subject | 9127580151 | | | | | | | | |
| á | Webhook/Endpoint | | status | 100 | | | | | | | | |
| - | Email Follow-ups | | priority | Terrible | | | | | | | | |
| | Pending Triggers | | group_id | Terrible | | | | | | | | |
| | | | description | 2019-05-01 | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | Finish | | | | | | | • | 2 |

Your integration is now complete and all the required data will automatically be sent to your Freshdesk/Freshsales CRM.

| e Smi | atEot × + | | y: : | σ× |
|-------|--------------------------------------|---|---|-------|
| - > | C @ app.smatbot.com/bot?bot_id= | 6792&profile_id=411&tab=triggers | ९ ७ ४ 😕 🗷 🖬 🗉 🕷 🕫 🌲 । | I 🛛 I |
| A AIM | ail Enterprise E 💿 💠 Settings 🐃 ccbp | 🗿 Online Logo Maker 🔇 Alibaba Mail 🔇 🤭 🎯 smatbot mail 🔺 do | odleblue 🙍 feltso 🚷 🌞 s3 image 🕱 Loan Vector Images | 30 |
| | Bots > DEEPAK WEBSITE TEST>Triggers | | T test test.greitea.com | n •* |
| + | | Main Flow v 1 selected • Save | | |
| Ô | Email Notification | Note: Connect your bot to the CRM of your choice. If you do not see | your CRM here, please contact us for custom CRM integration | |
| × | SMS Natification | (support@smatbot.com). | | |
| • | S WhatsApp Notification | Choose a CRM | > | |
| ø | Google Sheets | Developer's Guide for Dynamic Setup | > | |
| 0 | CRMs | Connected CRMs | • | |
| 52 | Zapier Integration | | | |
| 0 | 0 | Rono C | | |
| á | Webhook/Endpoint | | | |
| 8 | 🖄 Email Follow-ups | CRM Integration Deepaktest | | |
| | Pending Triggers | CRM Errors | > | |
| | | | | |
| | | | | |

Developer's Guide for Dynamic Setup

- First, install the bot on your website/dashboard.
- Next, set up the user's first name, last name, email, and phone using the functions listed below.
- To set the user's first name: window.botWidget.setUserFirstName('First Name')
- To set the user's last name: window.botWidget.setUserLastName('Last Name')
- To set the user's email: window.botWidget.setUserEmail('email@gmail.com')
- To set the user's phone number: window.botWidget.setUserPhone('999999999')
- Make sure to set these values before the bot opens up.
- You can use these values in dynamic questions to alter the flow based on them, or send this information to your CRM software.

Zoho Integration with SmatBot

Step 1:

Login into Smatbot and open your Bot.

| 😑 Sm | atBot × + | | | | | ∨ – ¤ × |
|-------------------------------|--------------------------------------|---|---------------------------|----------------------------|--------------------------------|-------------------------|
| $\leftrightarrow \rightarrow$ | C app.smatbot.com/bot?bot_id= | 6792&profile_id=411&ttab=triggers | | | Q 🖻 🏠 😗 🔣 🔳 🛛 | # 🔍 🖪 👌 🗯 🖬 🔕 E |
| M AliM | ail Enterprise E 💿 💠 Settings 🐃 ccbp | 🧿 Online Logo Maker 🔇 Alibaba Ma | il 🕲 🞯 🎰 smatbot | mail 🔺 doodleblue 🔛 fe | ltso 🔇 🥚 s3 image 🔟 Loan | Vector Images » |
| | Bots > DEEPAK WEBSITE TEST>Triggers | | | | | test test@feltao.com |
| + | | Main Flow 🗸 1 selec | ted - | ave | | |
| ۵ | Mail Notification | | | | | |
| ж | SMS Notification | (support@smatbot.com). | CRM of your choice. If yo | u do not see your CRM here | please contact us for custom C | M integration |
| | S WhatsApp Notification | Choose a CRM | | | | ~ |
| ۰ | Google Sheets | \sim | - | | | |
| 9 | CRMs | salesforce | 6 | (-) | CRM | |
| 20 | * Zapier Integration | Salesforce | FreshDesk | FreshSales | Zoho | |
| ٥ | O Webhook/Endpoint | | | | | |
| जी | | ∇ | r] | 6 | | |
| a | email Police-aps | Zoho Bigin | Zoho Desk | Hubspot | Google Sheets | |
| | Pending Triggers | | | | | |
| | | (And the second | | | | |
| | | 05 | | | | |

Go to **Triggers** and Navigate to the **CRM integration** section.

Step 3

Select **Zoho CRM** from the listed CRMs and click on **Connect your Account**.

| Smatt | Bot × + | | × | - @ × |
|---------------------------------|-------------------------------------|------------------------------------|---|----------------|
| \leftrightarrow \rightarrow | C @ app.smatbot.com/bot?bot_ic | l=6792&profile_id=411&tab=triggers | 옥 순 ☆ 🙂 🏼 📜 💆 🕭 🎓 | I 🖬 💿 🗄 |
| M AliMai | il Enterprise E 🚺 🏟 Settings 🐃 oct | op 🧿 Online Logo Maker 😵 Alibaba I | Mail 📀 🧒 🙆 smatbot mail 🔺 doodleblue 📓 feltso 🚷 🌞 s3 image 🔯 Loan Vector Images | 20 |
| | Bots > DEEPAK WEBSITE TEST>Triggers | | test test | feitso.com 📍 🍷 |
| + | | Main Flow - 4 se | lected - Save | |
| ô | Email Natification | | | |
| ж | SMS Natification | * | dia | |
| | WhatsApp Notification | | CRM | |
| 0 | Google Sheets | | Connect your Zoho Account | |
| 9 | | | \sim | |
| 25 | URMS | | Connect an Account | |
| 0 | 🔆 Zapier Integration | L | | |
| ait | Webhook/Endpoint | | | |
| A | Email Follow-ups | | | |
| - | Pending Triggers | | | |
| | | | | |
| | | | | |

Next, in the popup window, login with your Zoho account and accept the permissions. Great! Your Zoho account is now connected to SmatBot.

| Z Zoho Accounts | x + | 5 | e = | a | > |
|--------------------------|--|-----------------|------------|-----|---|
| | .zoho.in/oauth/v2/auth?scope=ZohoCRM.modules.ALL%2CZohoCRM.settings.ALL%2Caaaserver.profile.ALL 🔍 🖄 🏠 🙆 🎛 🕎 👹 | V 🖬 👲 | * = | | |
| M AliMail Enterprise E 🚥 | 🏚 Settings 🕮 ccóp 👩 Online Logo Maker 🚱 Alibaba Mail 🔗 🤭 🍙 smatbot mail 🔺 doodleblue 🔟 feitso 📀 🍦 s3 image 👿 Loan | n Vector Images | | | , |
| | Event Update: celete your profile information: C Accounts Read: Update: celete your profile informations: C CMM Surys Private Umate Accounts Accounts | 0 | ohijth bha | gav | |
| | By clicking the "Accept" button you allow Smatbot to access data in your Zoho account. Accept Reject © 2022, Zoho Corporation Pyt Ltd. All Rights Reserved. | | | | |

Set up the triggers and assign the bot conversations to the respective CRM fields, and click on **Continue**.



Step 6

To push the leads to your respective Zoho Objects/modules, select 'Create Custom Object' and click on **Continue**. Search for your module and then **Select a Zoho Module**.

| 🕿 Sma | tBot × + | | - 0 × |
|-----------------|--|--|----------------|
| ← → M AliMa | C 🔒 app.smatbot.com/bot?bot_id=67928 sil Enterprise E 💶 🕸 Settings 🕮 ccbp 🧿 | profile_jid=4113&tab=triggers Q Le 🛠 🐨 👯 🍸 💥 🤍 🔝 🔞 Online Logo Maker 🗞 Alibaba Mail 🚱 🎯 🧟 smatbot mail 🛦 doodleblue 📓 feltoo 🎯 🥥 s3 image 💟 Loen Vector Images. | * = 0 0 : * |
| + | Bots > DEEPAK WEBSITE TEST>Triggers | Main Flow - Save | at@feltso.com |
| % • • • • • • • | SMS Notification WhatsApp Notification Coogle Sheets CRMs CRMs Vebhook/Endpoint Email Follow-ups Pending Triggers | Create Custom object Create a new custom object (of the type you choose). | |
| | | | • |

If you need to create a lead in Zoho CRM, select the **Leads Module**, and click on **continue**.

| Sma | atBot × + | | | | v - D x |
|-------------|--|--|---|-------------|-----------------------------|
| ← → M AliMa | C 🔒 app.smatbol.com/bol?bol.id al Enterprise E 🖸 🏟 Settings 🐃 ccb | 1928:profile_id=4118:tab=triggers O Online Logo Maker 🚱 Albaba Mail 😵 🞯 g | Q 년 ☆ ② smatbot mail 🔺 doodleblue 🧧 feltso 📀 | 🞯 🖽 🝸 🐹 🐨 🖺 |] 👌 🖈 ≕/ 🗖 🔕 🗄 Images >> |
| | Bots > DEEPAK WEBSITE TEST>Triggers | | | | test test@feltsa.com |
| + | Email Notification | Main Flow 👻 8 selected | - Save | | |
| * | SMS Notification | * | CRM | | |
| 0 | Google Sheets | | Zoho Account | | |
| #1 © | * Zapier Integration | Type Here | Choose a Zoho Module | | |
| | Webhook/Endpoint Email Follow-ups | | Continue | | |
| a | Pending Triggers | | | | |
| | | | | | |

Now fill the fields with Bot Question types (listed below) to assign values to your Zoho modules.

Field types:

| X SmatBot Al C | hatbot for all your 🗙 🛛 🔁 Zoho Accounts | × + | | | ~ - ¤ × |
|--|--|--|---|--|--|
| app.smatbot.com/bot?bot_id=6792 | &profile_id=411&tab=triggers | | ्र 🖻 🕸 🧕 |) HE T 💓 🖲 | * |
| erprise E 💶 🌣 Settings 🐃 ccbp 🤇 | Online Logo Maker 💿 Alibaba Mail 💿 😁 | 🙆 smatbot mail 🔺 doodleblu | ve 📴 feltso 📀 🏮 s3 in | nage 👿 Loan Vector Images. | |
| s > DEEPAK WEBSITE TEST>Triggers | | | | T te | ist st@feltsa.com |
| | Main Flow 🗸 8 selected | Save | | | |
| Email Notification | Question 🗸 | ✓ Select a question | ~ | | |
| SMS Notification | | | | | |
| WhatsApp Notification | Country | | | | |
| Google Sheets | Question 🗸 | Select a question | v | | |
| CRMs | | | | | |
| A Tania Internation | Description | | | | |
| A Tobler Integration | Question 😽 | ✓ Select a question | ~ | | |
| Webhook/Endpoint | | | | | |
| Email Follow-ups | Lead Image | | | | |
| Pending Triggers | Question 🗸 | ✓ Select a question | ~ | | |
| | | 5 | | | |
| | | Continue | | | |
| | app.smatbot.com/bot?bot id=6792 reprise E Settings % obp Emoil Notification SMS Notification MuhatsApp Notification Google Sheets CRMS Capier Integration Webhook/Endpoint Email Follow-ups Pending Triggers | app.smatbot.com/bot?bot.id=67928profile_id=4118tab=triggers prise E. apple Settings % cobp Coline Logo Mater. All Addition Country Belected Country | app.smatbot.com/bothbot jd=57928.profile.jd=4118tab=triggers prise E: • • • Settings %: obp • Online.logo Maler • Albaba Mail • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • | app.smatbot.com/bot?bot.jd=67928profile_jd=4118tab=triggers c u c c c c c c c c c c c c c c c c c | a app.smatbot.com/bot?bot.jd=67328profile.jd=4118tab=triggers apples EL C Settings accops Conine Logo Mater. Allabab Mail C Settings accops Conine Logo Mater. Allabab Mail C Settings C Conine Logo Mater. Allabab Mail C Conine Logo Mater. C Main Flow B Selected C Conine Logo Mater. C Main Flow B Selected C Conine Logo Mater. C Conine Logo Mater. |

Question: Use the response made to a specific question in SmatBot to fill a field in your CRM. E.g: To fill the mobile number field in Zoho CRM, select the question where the user enters their mobile number.

Static Text: Fill in a field in your CRM that needs to be set to a default/preset value using static text.

Data Composition: Assign multiple questions, static fields or a combination of both these to a single field in your CRM.

Email: When a user enters their email in any one of the flows, the email will be pushed to your CRM.

Once you finish setting up all the fields, click on **continue**. **Note:** Fields marked as * are mandatory to fill out for the CRM.

Step 8
Once you finish setting up all the fields, click on **Continue**.

Note: Fields marked as * are mandatory to fill out for the CRM.

Step 9

Name your integration and choose an integration condition to trigger it and click on Save 🗙 💽 SmatBot | Al Chathot for all your 🗴 | 🔁 Zoho Accounts 🛛 🗙 | 🕂 😑 SmatBot v σ ← → C app.smatbot.com/bot?bot_id=6792&profile_id=411&tab=triggers Q 🖻 🛊 😗 🏼 🗉 🕷 🗊 * 🗆 🔕 🗄 . M AliMail Enterprise E... 💶 🏚 Settings 💷 ocbp 🧿 Online Logo Maker... 🚱 Alibaba Mail 🗞 🤭 🎯 smatbot mail 🔺 doodleblue 🔯 feltso 📀 🍅 s3 im eltso.com 📍 🔻 T test test@f Bots > DEEPAK WEBSITE TEST>Triggers Save Main Flow v 8 selected -0 Email Notification Zoho Account 18 SMS Notification . WhatsApp Notification You have successfully submitted the fields, Now click on Test button to check ۰ Google Sheets Name your Integration 9 CRMs Please give your Integration a name 12 * Zapier Integration 0 Webhook/Endpoint 51 Integration Condition a Email Follow-ups 品 Pending Triggers This CRM will work only when Main Flow Select a question 2

Now that your setup is complete, give it a name and click on Save.

Step 10

Select the condition to trigger the integration and push data to your CRM.

Note: Leave this blank if you don't have any such conditions.

Step 11

You can test the integration by clicking on the **Test** button below. Click on **finish** to complete the setup.

| Suma Suma | atBot 🗙 💽 SmatEot Al | Chalbot for all your 🗙 🚺 Zoho Accounts 🗙 🕂 🔶 🗠 🗠 | 3 × |
|-------------------|--|---|-----|
| \leftrightarrow | C app.smatbot.com/bot?bot_id=679 | 92&profile_id=411&tab=triggers Q 🖻 🛧 🖲 🎛 🗉 💩 🇯 🗖 | 0 : |
| M AliMa | ail Enterprise E 💶 🏟 Settings 🐃 ocbp 🄇 | 🗿 Online Logo Maker 🔇 Alibaba Mail 🔇 🥱 🔄 smatbot mail 🔺 doodleblue 📓 feltzo 🔇 🏮 s3 image 反 Loan Vector Images | 39 |
| | Bots > DEEPAK WEBSITE TEST>Triggers | test test@lettsa.com | • • |
| + | | Main Flow V 8 selected - Save | |
| Ô | Email Notification | | |
| × | SMS Notification | integration conductor | |
| | WhatsApp Notification | This CRM will work only when | |
| 0 | B. Gauda Sharts | Main Flow Y Select a question Y | |
| 0 | Google sneets | | |
| -5 | CRMs | Save | |
| | * Zapier Integration | Test your integration | |
| | Webhook/Endpoint | | |
| ai | Email Follow-ups | Event - create_custom | |
| 盘 | Sending Triggers | | |
| | Chang nggers | Owner Test First name | |
| | | | |
| | | Finish | - |

If you want to push the leads from two different flows of a bot to a different module in the **ZOHO CRM**, create a new CRM Integration and repeat the previous steps in this guide.

Congratulations! You have successfully integrated your bot with Zoho CRM.

| 9 Smatt | Bot × + | | | × – | ٥ | |
|---|---|--|---|----------------|------|-----|
| ↔ → M AIMai | C 🔒 app.smatbot.com/bot?bot_id=(| 792&profile_id=411&tab=triggers O Online Logo Maker 🗞 Albaba Maii 🔇 🎯 🍙 smatbot mail 🔺 doodle | ् ि 🖈 📀 😹 🗉 👹 🛛 | ges | 0 | , |
| 1 | Bots > DEEPAK WEBSITE TEST > Triggers | | | test@feltso.co | om • | |
| + | Email Notification | Main Row v Iselected v Sove | ir CRM here, please contact us for custom CRM integra | tion | | |
| | S WhatsApp Notification | Choose a CRM | | > | | |
| 0 | Google Sheets | Developer's Guide for Dynamic Setup Connected CRMs | | > ~ | | |
| 22 00 21 | Zapier Integration Webbook/Endpoint | | | | | |
| ۵ | Ernoll Follow-ups Pending Triggers | CRM Errors CRM Errors | | > | | |
| | | | | | | :02 |

Video Guide

Developer's Guide for Dynamic Setup

- First install the bot on your website/dashboard.
- Next, you can set up the user's first name, last name, email and phone using the functions listed below.
 - To set user's first name: window.botWidget.setUserFirstName('First Name')
 - To set user's last name: window.botWidget.setUserLastName('Last Name')
 - To set user's email :window.botWidget.setUserEmail('email@gmail.com')
 - To set user's phone number: window.botWidget.setUserPhone('999999999')
- Make sure to set these values before the bot opens up.
- You can use these values in dynamic questions to alter the flow based on them, or send this information to your CRM software.

Google Sheets

Step 1:

Login into Smatbot and open your Bot.

Step 2

Go to **Triggers** and Navigate to the **CRM integration** section.

| 🕿 Sma | tBot × + | | | | ✓ – a > |
|---------------------------------|---------------------------------------|--|--|--|-------------------------|
| \leftrightarrow \rightarrow | C 🔒 app.smatbot.com/bot?bot_id= | 6792&profile_id=411&tab=triggers | | 9 16 1 6 H I 🕷 🖲 | 🗉 👌 🛪 🖬 🔕 🗄 |
| M AliMa | ail Enterprise E 🖸 🏟 Settings 🐃 cobp | 🧿 Online Logo Maker 🚷 Alibaba Mail 🚷 🕴 | 😚 🎯 smatbot mail 🔺 doodleblue 🔯 f | ieltso 🔞 🏮 s3 image 🔀 Loan Vector | Images x |
| | Bots > DEEPAK WEBSITE TEST > Triggers | | | | test test@leltsa.com |
| + | | Main Flow - I selected | Save | | |
| Ô | Email Notification | Nate Connect up a hall in the COM of | mus abaims. If use of a set and use a COLI barre | - stars contact is far a stors C01 (inte | erenti nin |
| × | SMS Notification | (support@smatbot.com). | our choice. If you do not see your caw hen | e piedse contact as for clustom cam inte | gradon |
| | S WhatsApp Notification | Choose a CRM | | | ~ |
| 0 | Google Sheets | | | | |
| 9 | CPUs | salesforce | ດ 🧧 | ZOHO | |
| 24 | e cons | | | CRM | |
| 0 | Tapier Integration | Scilestorce Fi | eshDesk FreshSales | Zono | |
| ណ៍ | Webhook/Endpoint | | -1 🔊 | | |
| 8 | 🖆 Email Follow-ups | V | | Google Sheets | |
| | Pending Triggers | Zoho Bigin Z | oho Desk Hubspot | Google Sheets | |
| | | ବ | | | |
| | | ଙ୍କ | | | |
| | | Custom Webbooks | | | • |

Step 3

Select Google Sheets from the listed CRMs and click on Connect your Account.

| $\leftrightarrow \rightarrow$ | C app.smatbot.com/bot?tab=trippe | s⊥ id=5792&profile id=411 Q iA 🕁 🔞 🎛 T 💆 💿 🗊 🍐 🗯 🖅 🔳 | |
|-------------------------------|--------------------------------------|---|---|
| M AliMa | ail Enterprise E 💶 🔅 Settings 🕮 ccbp | 🕽 Online Logo Maker 🎯 Alibaba Maii 📀 🧐 💿 smatbot mail 🔺 doodleblue 📓 feltso 📀 🌻 s3 image 💟 Loan Vector Images | |
| | Bots > DEEPAK WEBSITE TEST>Triggers | test test givitacion | - |
| + | Empi Notification | Main Flow V 4 selected - Save | |
| % | SMS Notification | ¢ | |
| | S WhatsApp Notification | Graph Fran | |
| 0 | Google Sheets | Connect your Google Sheets Account | |
| 25 | CRMs | Connect an Account | |
| 0 | Webhook/Endpoint | | |
| .al | 🖄 Email Follow-ups | | |
| 20 | Pending Triggers | | |
| | | | |

Step 4



Login with your Gmail credentials and give all permissions to SmatBot.

Step 5

Once your Google account is connected, choose the questions that need to be pushed into Google Sheets, and then click on **continue**.

| 🖻 Se | natBot × + | v - a x |
|---|---|---|
| ← → M A0 | C = app.smatbot.com/bot?bot_id=6 Mail Enterprise E C C Settings = cobp Bots > DEEPAK WEBSITE TEST>Triggers | 792 åprofile id=411 åtab=triggers Q 🕑 🏠 🖲 🧮 🗊 🐭 🖗 🔝 🎝 💭 💭 <table-cell> 🤹 <table-cell> 👘 💭 💭 🚱 Smatbot mail 🛦 doodleblue 📓 felto 🚱 🌸 slimage 💟 Loan Vector Images >></table-cell></table-cell> |
| + A × • • • • · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · | Email Notification SMS Notification SMS Notification Google Sheets CRMs Zapier Integration Webbook/Endpoint Email Follow-ups Panding Triggers | Main Flow Biselected Sove |

Step 6

Next, give your CRM a name, select a condition if necessary for the data to be pushed and click **Save**.

| 🙁 Sma | atBot × + | v | - a > |
|---------------------------------|---------------------------------------|--|-------------|
| \leftrightarrow \rightarrow | C app.smatbot.com/bot?bot_id=67 | 92&profile_id=411&tab=triggers Q 🔄 🏠 🗵 👹 🗊 👹 🗊 | |
| M AliMa | ail Enterprise E 👩 🂠 Settings 📟 ccbp | 🗿 Online Logo Maker 🚳 Alibaba Mail 🚳 🎯 🍙 smatbot mail 🔺 doodleblue 🧧 feltso 🚳 🌞 s3 image 👿 Loan Vector Images | 30 |
| | Bots > DEEPAK WEBSITE TEST > Triggers | Tost test | @feitso.com |
| + | | Main Flow ~ 8 selected - Save | |
| ۵ | Email Notification | Please give your Integration a name | |
| 26 | SMS Notification | | |
| | S WhatsApp Notification | deepak test | |
| 0 | Google Sheets | | |
| 9 | | Integration Condition | |
| 25 | CRMs | This CRM will work only when | |
| 0 | * Zapier Integration | Main Flow v What is your gender? v Option1 v | |
| - | Webhook/Endpoint | | |
| | Email Follow-ups | and a second | |
| 9 | Pending Triggers | Test your Integration | |
| | | | |
| | | Test | |
| | | | |

| Step | 7 |
|------|---|
|------|---|

| Test the | integration | using the | Test | button. |
|-----------|-------------|-----------|------|---------|
| i cot the | integration | using the | ICJC | button. |

| 9 Sm | atBot × + | v – D x |
|---|---|---|
| ← → M AliM | C 🔒 app.smatbot.com/bot?tab=trig; ail Enterprise E 💿 🔹 Settings 🛋 ocbp | pers&lbot_id=6792&profile_id=411 Q 😢 🛧 😌 🖽 🗊 🐹 🖗 🔝 🌢 🛸 🔲 🔕 O Online Logo Maker 🚱 Albeba Mail 📀 🎯 🙆 smatbot mail 🛦 doodleblue 📓 feitso 📀 🍥 si image 💟 Loan Vector Images ** |
| + | Bots > DEEPAK WEBSITE TEST>Triggers | Main Flow v 4 selected - Sove |
| × | SMS Notification | Integration Condition |
| • | WhatsApp Notification | This CRM will work only when Main Flow Vihat is your gender? Viption Vi |
| 0 | Google Sheeta | Sove |
| 0 | * Zapier Integration | Test your Integration |
| जी | Webhook/Endpoint Email Follow-ups | Test |
| iĝi | S Pending Triggers | Finish |
| | | |

Step 8

Success! Open the Google Sheet link to access the sheet.

| 😑 Sma | itBot × + | ✓ – a × |
|---------------|---------------------------------------|--|
| \rightarrow | C app.smatbot.com/bot?tab=trig | ggers⊥_id=6792&profile_id=411 Q 🕑 🖈 😨 🔠 🚸 🎘 🔲 🧿 🗄 |
| AliMa | ail Enterprise E 😰 🌣 Settings 📽 cobp | o 🖸 Chine Logo Maker 🚱 Alicaba Mail 🤣 🧐 🙆 smatbot mail 🔺 doodleblue 🧧 feltso 🚱 🥚 s3 image 👿 Loan Vector Images » |
| | Bots > DEEPAK WEBSITE TEST > Triggers | test diviso com |
| + | | Main Row v 4 selected • Sove |
| 6 | Email Notification | |
| ж | SMS Notification | ÷ |
| | WhatsApp Notification | |
| 0 | Coordo Shorta | EE Google Doorin |
| 0 | | Google Sheets Account |
| 22 | CRMs | |
| 0 | * Zapier Integration | You have successfully submitted the fields, Now click on Test button to check |
| á | Webhook/Endpoint | Choot I// |
| a | Email Follow-ups | https://docs.google.com/spreadsheets/d/hyt/ThEY 🛃 🕜 |
| _ | Pending Triggers | |
| | | |
| | | Name your Integration |
| | | Please give your Integration a name |

Developer's Guide for Dynamic Setup

- First install the bot on your website/dashboard.
- Now you can set up the user's first name, last name, email and phone using the functions listed below.
 - To set user's first name : window.botWidget.setUserFirstName('First Name')
 - To set user's last name : window.botWidget.setUserLastName('Last Name')
 - To set user's email :window.botWidget.setUserEmail('email@gmail.com')
 - To set user's phone number:window.botWidget.setUserPhone('999999999')
- Make sure to set these values before the bot opens up.
- You can use these values in dynamic questions to alter the flow based on them, or send this information to your CRM software.

4. Live chat

Getting started with live chat

Adding Live Agents to your automated chatbot to create a human-bot hybrid solution helps make customer experience seamless & efficient.

To begin, follow the steps listed below:

1. Creating Agents, Departments & Roles:

a. * ADD IMAGE

| | ateot × + | | | | | · - D | 1 |
|-------------------|---------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|------------------|---------------------------|------------------------|-------------------------|-----|
| \leftrightarrow | C A app.smatbot.com/account | | | Q 🖻 🛊 🄇 | 🖻 HH 🗈 🖬 🖲 🗉 | 3 👌 🛪 🗐 🖬 🚳 |) : |
| M ABM | Iail Enterprise E 💶 🏟 Settings 🐃 ccbp | O Online Logo Maker 📀 Alibaba Mail 📀 | 😵 🙆 smatbot mail | 🛦 doodleblue 🔄 feltso 🔇 🍯 | s3 image 🔀 Loan Vector | r Images | 20 |
| | | | | | | test test@feitso.com | |
| | | | | | | | |
| | 2 Your Profile | Departments | | | Create Dep | ortment | |
| 8 | 0 | Departmenta | | | | | |
| • | Change Password | Name | Size | Members | Actions | | |
| | 🔏 Create Department | Sales Department | 010 | NA | | | |
| | 🐸 Create User | | 104 | in. | | | |
| | Mail Server Credentials | Technical Team | NA | NA | 1 | | |
| | | | | | 2 | | |
| C | Live Chat WhatsApp Notification | Custom Department | NA | NA | 1 | | |
| | Delete Account | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | |

| amau | fot × + | | | | | × - | n x |
|--------|------------------------------------|----------------------------------|-----------------------------------|------------|-----------------------|----------------|------------|
| • > | C @ app.smatbot.com/account | | | Q 12 \$ | 9 BE I 🖬 🖲 🛙 | 3 👌 🛸 🗐 | 🗆 📵 🗄 |
| AliMai | Enterprise E 🖸 🏟 Settings 🐃 ccbp 🄇 | 🕽 Online Logo Maker 🔇 Alibaba Ma | i 🔇 😇 🙆 smatbot mail 🔺 doodleblue | ieltso 🔇 🌘 | s3 image 💟 Loan Vecto | r images | 35 |
| | | Create User | | × | | Test plates or | n * |
| A | Le Your Profile | Туре | | | Filters : All Use | rs 👻 Create N | lenie User |
| | Change Password | Live Agent | | ~ | | | |
| | 🛓 Create Department 🦯 | Nome | | - 1 | Mobile Number | Actions | |
| | 😂 Create User | Email | Fhone Number | | 555. | 1 8 | |
| | Email Server Credentiats | | = · | | | | |
| | Dve Chat WhatsApp Notification | | Avotar | | +91-7805432780 | 1 C | • |
| ~ | Contests Account | + 🙆 🕃 | 28724 | Ŀ | +30-8769092980 | × @ | • |
| | | Bot(s) | Active Chats Limit Department | | | | |

- Login to the SmatBot Dashboard => Account => Create User => Select 'Live Agent' as the User Type.
- Setup departments to organize your agents and assign users to them.
- For each live agent, assign the relevant department & role.
 - Analysts can access analytics only.
 - Supervisors can manage all the live agents, check how many agents are online, and how many chats they are handling at any given moment. They can also assign the chats between agents.
- Next, fill in the necessary details. Select the bots, number of chats you would like the agent to handle & assign a relevant department to each live agent and click on create.
- Your Live Chat Agent is ready to go!

2. Setting up Live Chat:

- * ADD IMAGE

| SmatB | ot | × | + | y. | - a × |
|--------|-------------------|-----------------|-------------------|---|--------------|
| > | C 🔒 app.sma | atbot.con | n/bot?bot_id=12 | 7638.profile_jd=118.tab=setup Q 🖻 🛣 🍸 👹 🖗 🧶 | ≓/ 🛛 🔕 : |
| AfMail | Enterprise E 🕒 | Setti | ings 🌇 ccbp | 🖸 Chrine Logo Maker 🔇 Alibaba Mail 🔇 🥳 😡 smatbot mail 🔺 doodleblue 🔛 feltso 🔇 🏮 s3 image 💟 Loan Vector Images | 39 |
| | lots > SmatBot>5 | letup | | S smith | en 🔭 |
| 1 | | | | Note: Please press "Enter" for Paragraph break | |
| | Mojes Flow | ~ | + | Size * Line Breaker B I i≡ i≡ ∐ % □ | |
| | | | Ask User | Talk to our Live agent | 0.0 |
| | | | | | |
| | ? | 0 | 2 | | ca nepty |
| | | | | Basic Media Advanced | 8.8 |
| | - | # | * | Select your office dates | of a nipty |
| | | | | MON V TUE WED THU K FRI SAT SUN | |
| | O Terms Proper | 9 | 1 | | |
| | | | | | |
| | | | ~ | Slot Timings : 10.30 AM V - 06.00 PM V Timezone GMT+05.30(i V | |
| | - | | 1 | Dut of office Meesone * 0 | |
| | No. 1 | Humon Handow | Service Statement | Ann a mine weeking a | |
| | | | | | |

- To set up Live Chat, add the 'Live Agent' Question type to the bot.
- Click on edit question & configure the live chat settings based on your preferences.
- Login with your credentials using the URL https://www.smatbot.com/login either as an 'Admin' or as an 'Agent'.
- If you have logged in as an 'Admin' you will have six options:- **Setup**, **Trigger**, **Settings**, **Access Chats**, **Live Chats**, and **Analytics** for the bots you have already created.
- If you have logged in as an 'Agent' you will have access to only two options Access Chats and Live Chats.
- The Admin can add any number of agents (based on their subscription) and access the live chats of all agents. Whereas, for agents to get access to a particular chat, they must first request the agent who is currently part of the live chat.

3. Using Live Chat:

- * ADD IMAGE

Live Agent - Example

To access live chat, click on the second option on the right side of the bot.

| Welcome to SmatBot! | | |
|---|---------|---|
| |) 10 | |
| | | _ |
| Call us | | |
| Call us Whatsapp us Talk to live agent | | |
| Call us Whatsapp us Talk to live agent B+ Book Demo | | |

- To access live chat, click on the second option on the right side of the bot.
- Access the active chats by clicking on them. **Note**: Mark a chat as important by clicking on the **star** button.
- You can:
 - Add a Name to Chat, Hide Chat, Close Chat, Mark as Resolved, Request Feedback or Assign to a Different Agent (If the query raised by a user is not relevant to you, you can send the query over to another agent who can resolve it).
- Canned Responses: You can set up repeated or top queries asked by a user with Canned Responses.
- You can email the entire transcript of the chat to the user or yourself/your team.

4. Analytics & Live Chat Data

- * ADD IMAGE



- You can check detailed analytics of live chat using our analytics dashboard.
- Likewise, you can download all live chat data at any point by adding a date range or filtering based on your requirements.

5. Agent Status & Routing

- **Agent Status** : Agents can set their status directly from the dashboard. We currently have two available options.
 - Online
 - Away
- **Routing**: SmatBot automatically routes all the user requests and assigns them to the available agents who are online based on the number of concurrent chats they are handling in real-time.

Note: Default offline message : When no agents are available to assist the users, a default message is shown. This message can by chosen by the user.

5. Analytics

Smatbot provides useful metrics that you can use to analyze and improve your business processes. Use our Analytics dashboard to understand what users value, what frictions your users have & how to improve your overall user experience.

For any custom metrics /analytics please contact us at support@smatbot.com

To access our analytics dashboard: Log in to your SmatBot account > Click on the analytics icon of your **bot** > Click on the left sidebar and choose analytics

i. * ADD IMAGE

b. Select the analytics you wish to see and select the date range.

i. * ADD IMAGE

- Bot Chat Analytics for Lead Generation

| | | | v – a |
|---|---|---|------------------------------------|
| =analytics⊥_id=12763&profile_id=11 | (| Q 🖻 🛧 😨 🖽 🝸 🛤 | 🖲 🖬 🛊 🗮 🖬 🔕 |
| cobp 🧿 Online Logo Maker 🚱 Alibaba Mail 🚱 | 😂 🎰 smatbot mail 🔺 doodleblue 🚦 | 🍯 feltso 🔮 🌻 s3 image 🕅 U | .can Vector Images |
| | | | S SmatBot Infogramatbot.com |
| | | | |
| ✓ 2022-09-05 - 2022 | View | Loca | ition Based Analy! 👻 |
| Unique Interactions | Levels | Total Leasts | |
| 201 | 22 | ö 991 | 22 |
| 3 | | | |
| Interaction Rate | Lead Generation Rate | Revisited La | anda |
| 49% | 11% | 71 | • |
| | | | |
| | Visitors Timing chart | | |
| | | | Sessions |
| | 40 | | |
| | 35 | | |
| | 30 | | |
| | 23 | | |
| | anakytus⊥_id=12763&profile_id=11 xtp | analytics&bot.jd=12763&profile.jd=11 (ctp C Online Logo Makier (C Alibaba Mail (C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C | eanalytics⊥_id=12763&profile_id=11 |

- Visitors: Total number of users the bot tracked.
- Unique Interactions: Number of unique visitors who interacted with the bot.
- Leads: Number of leads generated in a selected date range.
- Total Leads: Total number of leads generated since inception of the bot.
- Appointments Booked: Total number of appointments booked in selected date range.
- Interaction Rate: Percentage of visitors who interacted with the bot against the total number of visitors.
- Lead Generation Rate: Percentage of leads generated with respect to total interactions.

- Revisited Leads: Number of leads who visited your website multiple times.
- Daily Leads: The leads generated on a daily basis are separated into the selected date range
- Visitors Timing chart: Daily visitor timing chart of bot interactions.
- Option Wise Feedback: Feedback of the options selected by the user in the bot.
- Skipped Questions: Skipped question by the user.
- Top 10 External Sources: External Lead sources.
- Top 10 Internal Sources: Internal Lead sources.
- Bot Chat Analytics for Customer Support
- * ADD IMAGE

| | app.smatbot.com | /bot?bot_id=5 | 7668.profile_id=118tt | ab=analytics | uil 🙆 🕅 🌰 emative | tanai 🔺 door | Q 🖻 | | 🗈 💓 🐨 🖬 👌 | * = 1 | 0 |
|----------------|------------------------------------|---------------|--------------------------------------|---------------|----------------------------------|--------------|-------------------------|--------------------|----------------------------------|----------------|----|
| Bots > | Support>Analytics | | • | | | | | • | S SmatBo | t atbot.com | •• |
| Во | ot Chot Analytics 👻 | All | ✓ 2023 | -08-08 - 2022 | . 🗰 View | | | | Location Based And | ily 🕶 🛃 | |
| × Vie | sitors 75 | * | Unique Interactions 102 | • | Tickets Generated 19 | | Total Ticketa 176 | | User Satisfaction Score 0% | ۷ | |
| Ap Bo 21 | ppointments poked 8 | 8 | Interaction Rate 18% | da | Ticket Generation Rate 19% | ~ | Positive Feedback | | Negative Feedback O | ٠ | |
| ۵ ال ۱ ال | usiness initiated priversations | 0 | User Initiated Conversations O | 0 | Whatsapp Session Messages | 0 | | | | | |
| 5 C | Daily Tickets | | | Overall 5 | Session Ratings | | | Visitors Timing ch | art | | |
| | 4 | • | | | | | | 85 | | Sessions | |

- Visitors: Total number of users the bot tracked.
- Unique Interactions: Number of unique visitors who interacted with the bot.
- Tickets Generated: Number of tickets generated in selected date range.
- Total Tickets: Total number of tickets generated since inception of the bot.
- Appointments Booked: Total number of appointments booked in selected date range.
- Interaction Rate: Percentage of visitors interacted with respect to total visitors.

- User Satisfaction Score: Satisfaction rate of customers with respect to the individual feedbacks given to bot answers.
- Ticket Generation Rate: Percentage of tickets generated with respect to total interactions.
- Positive Feedback: Number of positive feedback given to individual bot answers.
- Negative Feedback: Number of negative feedback given to individual bot answers.
- Visitors Timing chart: Daily visitor timing chart of bot interactions.
- Overall Session Ratings: Average rating given to the chat session by the users
- Response Wise Feedback: Feedback breakdown of individual bot answers
- Option Wise Feedback: Feedback breakdown of the options selected by the user in the bot
- Intent Wise Breakdown: Number of times Particular Al intents are fetched.
- Skipped Questions: Skipped question by the user.
- Top 10 External Sources: External Lead sources.
- Top 10 Internal Sources: Internal Lead sources.
- Live Chat Analytics for Lead Generation
- * ADD IMAGE



- Bot Sessions: Total number of unique chatbot interactions

- Live Chat Sessions: Total number of unique live chat interactions
- Resolved Chats: Total number of chats marked resolved.
- First Response Time: Average time taken to respond to a user
- Customer Satisfaction Rate: Satisfaction rate of customers with respect to the final feedback given.
- Bot To Live Chat Rate: Percentage of live chat sessions with respect to bot sessions.
- Closed Chats: Total number of chats that are marked as closed.
- Chats Attended: Total number of chats attended by agent(s)
- Missed Chats: Total number of chats that are not attended by agent(s)
- Abandoned Chats: Total number of chats abandoned by the user and agents.
- Real-Time Analytics for Support
- * ADD IMAGE

| SmatBot | × + | | | | | | | | | | ~ | | a | × |
|--------------|--------------------------|---------------------------|----------------------|--------------------|------------|------------|---------------|------|---------|-----------|--------------------|-----|---|----|
| < → C | app.smatbot.com/bo | t?tab=analvtics⊥_id=12763 | Sprafile id=11 | | | QAA | () (1) | T | | 7 [7] | | - | | |
| M AliMail En | iterprise E 💿 🏟 Settings | 🖦 ccbp 🧿 Online Logo Mak | er 🕲 Alibaba Mail 🔇 | 🞯 🍙 smatbot mail 🔺 | doodleblue | 🛛 feitso 📀 | 😝 s3 im | age | Loan | Vector In | ages | | | 20 |
| Во | ts > SmatBot > Analytics | | | | | | | | S | Sma | itBot ()smatbot | com | • | |
| + | Real Time Analytics | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| ۵ (| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| х | Agents stats 2 | 7 | | | | | | Tota | I Chats | Happeni | ng | | | |
| | Profile \$ | Name + | Department + | Chats handling + | Status | • | | 0 | | | | | | |
| ٥ | 01 | 0.00 million (| | | | | | 0 | | | | | | |
| 0 | | smatbot | NA | 0 | away | | | | | | | | | |
| 11 | n 🔹 | Shareef | NA | 0 | away | | | | | | | | | |
| 0/ | 0 | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| - | | Uday | sales and support | 0 | away | | | | | | | | | |
| 8 | (| Roghav | sales and support | 0 | away | | | | | | | | | |
| | 8 | Sreemayi | Marketing Department | 0 | away | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | • | Ó |

- The Real Time Analytics provides all the information about the live agents, including the number of agents, their departments, the number of chats handled, and the status of the agents when they are online or away.

WhatsApp Analytics



AI Chatbots

Add AI Capabilities to your bots to make them smart & easily adaptable in all situations. For custom developments, please contact us at support@smatbot.com.

1. Creating an agent:

ii. * ADD IMAGE

- Once you <u>login</u> to your SmatBot account, navigate to the left side panel and select **Agents**.

| M AliMail Enterpris | e E 💶 🏟 Settings | 📫 ccop 🧿 Onine Lo | go Maker 🔇 Aliba | aba Mail 😨 😁 🙆 | smatbot mail 🔺 doodleblu | e 🖻 feltso 📀 | 😑 s3 image [Loai | n Vector Images | |
|---------------------|------------------|-------------------|------------------|----------------|--------------------------|--------------|-------------------|-------------------------|---|
| | | | | | | C | reate new agent | test test@feitso.com | • |
| | | | | A | gents | | | | |
| 8 | Agent Type | Display Name | Status | Small Talk | Active Model | Password | Setup | Actions | |
| | RASA | New Agent | | Disabled | NA | NA | Setup | 0 Ø | |
| | RASA | varun test | - | Disabled | NA | NA | Setup | a 0 | |
| | DialogueFlow | SmatBot | NA | Disabled | NA | NA | Setup | | |
| | Dialogueflow | test | NA | Disabled | NA. | NA | Setup | | |
| | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | |

- Click on the create agent button and select the **AI agent** you want to create.

| Smatsot | × | Smatbot | × + | | | · - 5 |
|---------------------|--------------------|--------------------|---|-----------------------|------------------|------------------------|
| ← → C | app.smatbot.com/ag | gents | | ର ଜ | ☆ ③ ₩ 1 | 🗰 🖉 🔝 🤞 🗯 🗖 🔕 |
| M AliMail Enterpris | se E 💶 🏟 Settings | 🖦 ccbp 🧿 Online Lo | igo Maker 😨 Alibaba Mail 🚱 🞯 🙆 smatbot mail 🖌 | doodleblue 📔 feltso 🕥 | 🥃 s3 image 🔀 Lo | an Vector Images |
| | | | | | Create new agent | Text Searchartee corry |
| 6 | | | Credte Agent | × | | |
| 4 | | | Choose Agent Type | | | |
| | Annal Torin | Display Marga | - Incent | | Tabut. | Artista |
| | Agent type | Chapitaly Incerne | | | serup | all shorts |
| | RASA | New Agent | | | tetap | . 0 |
| | RASA | vorum fasst | Dialogflow | nal. | Setup | |
| | | | Dialognow | | | |
| | | SPACED. | | | Setup | |
| | Distografies | No.4 | BM Watson | 200 | Satup | |
| | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | |

For DialogFlow:

Step 1

* ADD IMAGE

Give the Display name, Private key, Client email, and Project ID for the agent (You will find this in your Dialogflow account).

| SmatBot | × | SmatBot | × + | | | – в ; |
|-------------------|--------------------|----------------------|---|----------------------------|-------------------|---------------------------|
| ← → C | app.smatbot.com/ag | gents | | ର୍ଜ | 🖈 😑 H T 🖠 | 1 🕫 🖬 👌 🛪 🖬 🚳 |
| M AliMail Enterpr | ise E 💶 🏟 Settings | 🐃 ccbp 👩 Online Logo | Maker 🔇 Alibaba Mail 🔇 😁 🙆 smatbot ma | il 🔺 doodleblue 🔛 feltso 🔇 | 🤪 s3 image 👿 Loan | Vector Images |
| | | | Create Agent | × | reate new agent | tenghetas.com |
| 4 | | | Creating a Dialogue Flow Agent is just a ma Display Name (0) | tter of seconds now. | | |
| 8 | Agent Type | Display Name | Display Name | as words | Setup | Actions |
| | RADA | New Agent | Private Key 🕒 Enter your private key | NA. | tetap | |
| | RASA. | worum teat | Client Email 📵 | No. | Setup | 8 Ø |
| | Datagualitav | Smatter | Enter your client email | 100. | tetup | |
| | Dategorifies | test. | Project ID Create | | Setup | • |
| | | | | | | |

- For each Dialogflow agent that's been created, there will be a **project-id** assigned.
- Once you login to your Dialogflow account, go to Agents and click on the settings icon beside your agent. Next, click on the **Project ID link**.
- Click on the menu icon and click on the create key, after which a JSON file will be created from which you can extract the details of Private key, Client email, and Project ID.

Step 2:

Create a service account.

- In the Cloud console, go to IAM & Admin Section and click on the Create a service account.
- In the Service account name field, enter a name. The Cloud console fills in the Service account ID field based on this name.
- In the Service account description field, enter a description.
- To provide access to your project, In the select a role list, select **owner**. Click on Create and continue.

Note: The Role field affects which resources your service account can access in your project. You can revoke these roles or grant additional roles later. In production environments, do not grant the Owner, Editor, or Viewer roles. Instead, grant a predefined role or custom role that meets your needs.





To map your Dialogflow intents and responses to SmatBot, please give the necessary permissions.

- In Google Cloud, go to the IAM Admin section and select IAM.
- Click on add beside IAM on the top of the section and use the email of the service account created earlier.
- Give Dialogflow admin permissions to the agent for it to list intents in SmatBot.

Step 4:

| Google Cloud Platfor | rm 🔹 🗸 Search Products, resources, docs (/) | # 🗷 🚺 😣 E |
|---------------------------|--|-------------------------------------|
| IAM & Admin | IAM + ADD - REMOVE | 💌 HELP ASSIST |
| et iam | PERMISSIONS RECOMMENDATIONS HISTORY | |
| Identity & Organization | Permissions for project | |
| Rolicy Troubleshooter | These permissions affect this project and all of its resources. Learn more | |
| R Policy Analyzer | 2 service accounts with highly privileged roles Owner / Editor have excess permissions. Improve security by applying recommendations to these accounts. | VIEW RECOMMENDATIONS IN TABLE |
| Organization Policies | Learn more about recommendations, | |
| 1 Service Accounts | View By: PRINCIPALS ROLES | Include Google-provided role grants |
| Workload Identity Federal | | L , , , |
| Labels | The Filter Enter property name or value | e |
| Term | Type Principal 🕇 Name Role | Security insights |

- Create a service account key
 - In the Cloud console, click the email address for the service account that you created
 - Click on Keys
 - Click on Add key and then click **Create on new key**. Click Create. A JSON key file is downloaded to your computer. Click on Close.

For RASA:

iii. * ADD IMAGE



Step 1. After selecting Rasa for creating an agent, you will be prompted to give the agent's name.

Step 2. Once you give the name, click on **create** and your Rasa agent will be created with small talk (to address casual conversations) in SmatBot.

For IBM Watson :



iv. * ADD IMAGE

Step 1. After you select IBM Watson for creating an agent, you will be prompted to give the Display name, Assistant URL, API Key, and Workspace URL for the agent (you will find this in your IBM Watson account).

Step 2. Go to your assistant's home page to get the details mentioned above. Select the assistant you want to connect SmatBot with, and click on **settings**. Now navigate to the API details tab once settings are opened.

| ي م | Assistants An assistant helps your customors complete tasks and get information faster. It may clarify requests, search for answers from a knowledge base, and can also direct your customer to a human if needed. | | |
|--------|--|---------------------------|------------------|
| | testing assistant | Skills (1) first skill | Integrations (1) |
| | | | |

Step 3. Next, copy the assistant URL and API key from the API details page and paste them into the SmatBot's agent connection page in their respective fields.

| Assistant settings | | | × |
|---|---|-------------------------------|--------|
| Rename assistant API details Inactivity timeout | API details Assistant details Assistant name: Assistant ID: Assistant URL: Service credentials | testing 4d 12de-64 * | 0 0 |
| | Credentials name: API key: | Auto-generated credentials | 0 0 |

Step 4. Next, click on your agent and select the skill that you want to map SmatBot with.

| ري | ← Assistants | |
|----|--|--------------------|
| R | testing testing assistant | |
| | Skill A dialog skill provides specific responses you've created. Choose one for your assistant. Learn more | |
| | Dialog | |
| | first skill VERSION: DESCRIPTION: LANGUAGE: TRAINED DATA: VERSION: DESCRIPTION: English (US) 3 Intents 0 Entities 4 Dialog nodes | V View API details |
| | LINKED ASSISTANTS (1): testing | Swap skill |
| | Search Plus | Remove skill |
| | Turn any content into answers Create Q&A experience in minutes | |

Step 5. Next, click on View API details and copy the Legacy v1 workspace URL value and paste it in the SmatBot agent connection page in its respective field (Mandatory if you want to map your Agent intents to SmatBot Flow)

| Skill details | | × |
|--------------------------|-------------|--------------|
| Skill name: | first skill | 'n |
| Skill ID: | 56 | ĥ |
| Legacy v1 workspace URL: | 6 | 266 G |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |

Step 6. Now, click on the submit button, and SmartBot will connect with your Watson agent.

Training Rasa Agent:

Step 1. To start training your Rasa agent, click on the **setup button** of the agent you want to train.

| ← → C | app.smatbot.com/ag | gents | | | | Q LÉ | ☆ 🕝 H 🗉 | 🐹 🖲 😸 🗯 🖬 🌘 | |
|-----------------|----------------------|-------------------|-------------------|----------------|--------------------------|--------------|------------------|--------------------------|----|
| M AliMail Enter | prise E 🔨 🌼 Settings | 🎫 cobp 👩 Online L | ogo Maker 🞯 Aliba | iba Mail 🔕 🞯 🗟 | smatbot mail 🔺 doodleblu | e 😫 feitso 🕲 | 🥚 s3 image 🕅 Lo | an Vector Images | 35 |
| | | | | | | 0 | Create new agent | test testgrieltso.com | |
| | | | | A | gents | | | | |
| 8 | Agent Type | Display Name | Status | Small Talk | Active Model | Password | Setup | Actions | |
| | RASA | New Agent | | Disabled | NA. | NA | Setup | . 0 | |
| | RASA | varun test | | Disabled | NA | NA | Setup | . 0 | |
| | DialogueFlow | SmatBot | NA | Disabled | NA | NA | Setup | • | |
| | DialogueRow | teet | NA | Disabled | NA | NA | Setup | | |

Step 2. Copy the password shown in the top left corner and log in to Rasa x.

| SmatBot | x SmatBot x + | ⊻ – ¤ > |
|--------------------------|--|---|
| ← → C 🗎 app.sr | hatbot.com/agents | 익 순 ☆ 🞯 田 🗉 🕷 🐻 😓 🖬 🔕 |
| M AliMail Enterprise E 🚥 | . 🕸 Settings 🕮 ocbp 🧿 Online Logo Maker 🚱 Alibaba Ma | il 🗞 🞯 🙆 smatbot mail 🔺 doodleblue 📓 feltso 🚷 🏮 s3 image 👿 Loan Vector Images |
| Password : : | | Create new agent test test |
| 6 | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | Resel | |
| | | Welcome ! |
| | | Sign in to continue perfecting your bot! |
| | Rasa X Community | |
| | | |
| | | SIGN IN |
| | | |
| | Edition | UK UK |
| | Build, improve, and deploy assistants | I have an enterprise ID |
| | powered by Rasa. | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | <u>ି</u> ର |
| | | • |

Step 3:

Creating intent:

• After you log in to Rasa x on the left side panel, below training, select NLU

training and

| AliMai | KLU Training | Annotate new data | Regex & Lookup Th | raining data | Create new agent | test testgrieitso.com |
|--------|---------------------|-------------------|-------------------|--------------|------------------|--------------------------|
| ۵ | | | | | | |
| a | | | | | | |
| 8 | Q Search 1 log_ | | | | | + |
| | Sentence | | Intent | | | |
| | what can smatbot do | | smatbot.details | s (< 0.0) | \sim | |
| | | | | | | |

click the + icon in Annotate new data.

- Select any user query and click Enter.
- In the text box, type in the new intent name and click on create {intent name} in the dropdown and mark it as correct.

Note: We suggest following this naming convention while choosing the intent name: Product/service name.intent, e.g. SmatBot.pricing' where SmatBot is the product/service name and pricing is the intent.

| | NLU Training | Annotate new data | Regex & Lookup Training data | Create new agent | test testgreitso.com |
|---|---------------------|-------------------|---------------------------------------|------------------|-------------------------|
| ۵ | | | | | _ |
| 8 | | | | | |
| | Q Search 1 log | | | | + 表 |
| | Sentence | | Intent | | |
| | what can smatbot do | | smatbot.info | ~ | 0 |
| | | | Create "smatbot.info" | | _ |
| | what can smatbot do | | smatbot.info Create "smatbot.info" | ×.) | (|

Step 4:

Adding responses:

| Sm Sm | natBot | × SmatBot | × + | | | | × | _ | | |
|--------------------------|-------------------|---------------------------------|---|-----------------------------------|--------------|------------------|-----------------|-----------|---|----|
| $\leftarrow \rightarrow$ | C 🗎 ap | p.smatbot.com/agents | | Q E | e 🕁 🕒 B | 8 I 🕱 🗑 | 8 | * | • |) |
| M AR | fail Enterprise E | 🗈 🏟 Settings 🐃 ccbp 👩 Onlin | e Logo Maker 🔇 Alibaba Mail 🔇 🎯 🎯 smat | nbot mail 🔺 doodleblue 🔛 feltso 🤅 | 🔇 🥚 s3 image | 🔽 Loan Vector In | ages | | | |
| | Responses | | | | Create new | agent | test test@re | alteo.com | | |
| 6 | | | | | | | | | | |
| â | | | | | | _ | | | | |
| 8 | | Q Search 274 response Templates | | | | + | \$ | | | |
| | | utter_smatbot.details | smatbot can be used for customer support, | leads,surveys etc., | | Cancel | ter | | | |
| | | utter_agent.acquaintance | I'm a virtual agont | | | | Ť. | | | |
| | | utter_agent.acquaintance | Think of me as a virtual agent. | | | | | | | |
| | | utter_agent.acquaintance | Well, I'm not a person, I'm a virtual agent. | | | | | | | |
| | | utter_agent.acquaintance | I'm a virtual being, not a real person. | | | | | | | |
| | | utter_agent.acquaintance | I'm a conversational app. | | | | | | | |
| | | utter_agent.age | Eprefer not to answer with a number. I know | r l'm young. | | | | | | |
| | | utter_agent.age | I was created recently, but don't know my ex- | ort ago. | | | | | • | 2 |
| | | | | | | | | | | °. |

- Once you create a new intent, head over to responses, and click the + button.

- In the first text field, give the utterance name, e.g., utter_SmatBot.pricing and corresponding response in the second text field.

Step 5:

Creating a story:

- Now, let's map intent with a response. Head over to stories and click on the + button.



- Use the syntax below for creating a story and click on Save.# {story name}
 - * "intent name"
 - - "utterance name"

Step 6:

Adding entities:

- To add entities, you need to double-click on the word in the training data query you added.
- In the dialogue box, type in the entity name and click create{entity name} in the dropdown.

Example:

- Let's say, for example; you need to train your agent to answer pricing-related questions, users can ask many different synonyms like cost, expense, etc.

| _ | and a | | | | | | | | 1963 | |
|--------------------------|---------------------|---------------------------|---------------------------------|--|-------------------------|------------|----------|--------------|------|-----|
| $\leftarrow \rightarrow$ | C 🔒 app.sma | atbot.com/agents | | | Q 🖻 🖈 📵 👪 I | X (| 1 | * | | 1 1 |
| M AliM | Iail Enterprise E 💽 | 🗘 Settings 🕮 cop 🔿 Or | Onine Logo Maker 🚷 Alibaba Mail | 🚱 🤭 🙆 smatbot mail 🔺 doodleblue 🖻 | feltso 🔇 🥮 s3 image 💟 L | oan Vector | Images | | | 33 |
| | Password : | | | | Create new ager | | te te | st@rieitso.c | om | |
| ۵ | | NLU Training | | | | | 7 | * | | |
| 8 | | | An | blate new data Regist & Lookup Training data | | | | | | |
| - | 2 | Annot | tate Entities | | | | | | | |
| | 2 | Q. Search 3 5 Synonys | en Entity | | | + | \$ | | | |
| | æ | Sentence | Ing pricing ~ | intent | | | | | | |
| | <u>_</u> | what is the pricing of an | lodiun | smatbol.pricing (0.90) | ~ | | | | | |
| | | Smatbot cost | | amation.pricing (0.94) | × | | | | | |
| | | pricing | | greatings.bye (0.76) | ×] | | | | | |
| | | what is pricing | | smatisot.pricing 10.901 | ~ | | | | | |
| | | pricing? | | greetings.bye (0.78) | ~ | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | |
| | • | | | | | | - | | | |

- First, create an entity named pricing, and you can add cost, expenses in the training data and mark them as synonyms for your entity pricing.
- You should create at least two or more samples for intent mapping, two or more responses for an utterance, two or more samples for an entity mapping.
- You can create multiple intents, corresponding responses, stories, and entities. It makes the bot more diverse if there are multiple FAQ's.

Step 7:

Training and Activating Model (Mandatory after any changes done to the agent) :

- Once you add all the intents, responses, stories, and entities in your agent, click on Train.

| - Jinato | ur. | ^ | Jindush | A T. | | | | 1940 | |
|-------------------------------|--------------|----------------------|-----------------|---|--------------------|---------------------------------------|-------------------|--------|-----|
| $\leftrightarrow \rightarrow$ | C = = | app.smatbot.com/ager | its | | | Q 🖻 🏠 😁 🇮 🗉 🖊 | 1 🛛 👌 | * 🗆 (| • • |
| M AliMail | Enterprise E | 🖸 🏟 Settings | 📫 ccop 🥑 Online | Logo Maker 🚱 Alibaba Mail 🚱 🤭 🙆 smatb | ot mail 🔺 doodlebk | ue 🧧 feltso 🔇 🥚 s3 image 👿 Loan Vecto | Images | | 33 |
| | Password | | | | | Create new agent | test test@foit | so.com | |
| 6 | | | | | | | | | |
| 8 | | | | Q Search 99 stories | | | + | ¥ | |
| 8 | ρ | | 650779803505 | smatbot details | Î | Flow | | | |
| | 2 | | 433110509780 | 1 40 smatbot details 2 *searbot.details 3 - utter_swatbot.details | | | | | |
| | æ | | 710161803417 | | | | | | |
| | 9 | | 883649367298 | | | | | | |
| | | | 10704856425 | | | Start | | | |
| | | | .355703284500 | | | Amathetakiaki | | | |
| | | Stories | 986616140965 | | | utter_smathot.details | | | |
| | | | 986618140964 | | | End | | | |
| | | Train | 1 | | | | | ۲ | |
| | | | | | | | | + | |

- After completing training, head over to the models and activate the latest trained model by clicking on the three dots shown in the image below.

| ADLAST C | abarraria E 💼 💏 | Sattings at sting Chains Lang | Mainer 🗿 Alikaka Mail 🗿 🕿 🔿 resultant | ani 🔺 daadabhaa 🚺 falt | ten 🧿 💼 el imane 🖼 Lene Verteri | |
|----------|-----------------|-------------------------------|---------------------------------------|------------------------|---------------------------------|-----------------------|
| P | assword : | security and cosp | materia 🦉 Andaba Man 🦉 💮 🔤 sinabot i | | Create new agent | test test finites com |
| ۵ | | | | | | |
| 8 | Mod | Sels | | | of Uplea | d model |
| | P | | | | | |
| | -02 | Modelname | Created on | State | | |
| | æ | 20200103-131846 | Fri Jan 03 2020 18:48:11 GMT+0580 | | | |
| | @ | 20200103-130851 | Fri Jan 33 2020 18:38:51 GMT+0530 | Active | ake active | |
| | | 20200103 130847 | Fri Jan 33 1020 18:37:33 GMT (9530 | _ | | |
| | | 20200103-130721 | Fri Jan 03 2020 18:37:21 GMT+0530 | | | |
| | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | |



Connecting your agent to SmatBot:

- Once you finish setting up your Agent, head over to the flow setup part of the bot that you want to connect your agent with.

| 4 > 0 | ann smathat com (hat2hat id=67938)profile id | - 411 Ritab-cotup | 0 A 0 | |
|---------------|--|--|-----------------------------------|----------------------------|
| AliMail Enter | reita E 🖪 🗘 Satting 🐃 rohn 🔿 Onina Ion | n Makar 🗿 Alibaha Mail 🗿 🞯 🍙 smathert mail 🔺 r | nordahlar 🗖 faltan 🖉 🌼 silimana 🕅 | |
| | har ou 🧧 🖕 or out of a crob 🖉 ou in crob | | | |
| Bots | > DEEPAK WEBSITE TEST>Setup | View Setup Flow Setup Inst | al | test test gefeitse.com |
| + | FAQs Setup | | Search Q Eng | glish (Defoulit) 🗸 Preview |
| 6 | | | | |
| × | (?) FACE | ? What is your name | | / A 🖸 0 |
| | | | | User's reply |
| 0 | Al-Enabled | S Please ask us incase of any qu | eries | 1 . 0 0 |
| 0 | | | | |
| 25 | Anawaring | | | User's reply |
| 0 | Mop Intents | What is your gender? | | / 4 🗇 8 |
| á | Due Agent | | | User's reply |
| 8 | Live Agent | C Enter your mobile number | | / 4 0 0 |
| | Hanton Handow | | | Liser's reply |
| | | | | |
| | Only For WhatsApp | # How many bots do you want? | | / m 🖸 🖬 |

- From the left side, drag and drop the AI Answering question type into your chatbot flow and click on the edit option.
- Select your agent from the dropdown below, click on **Connect an agent** and click on Save.

| 🛚 AliMai | il Enterprise E 💶 💠 Settings 🐃 cobp 🧿 | Online Logo Maker 🔇 Alibaba Mail 🔇 🧐 🙆 smatbet mail 🛦 doodleblue 📔 felts: | 0 | | s3 imag | Loan Veo | tor Ima | jes | | | |
|----------|--|---|------|---|---------|----------|---------|--------------|----------|---------|---|
| | Bots > DEEPAK WEBSITE TEST-Setup | Edit Question | | × | 1 | | T | tent tent | physica | | • |
| + | El Carlos Fachara | Note: Please press "Enter" for Paragraph break | G | Ð | 0 | | | ~ | | Preview | |
| ۵ | 7 mgs setup | Size = Line Breaker B I 💷 🗮 🛄 % 🗖 | | | | | | | | | |
| x | 0 | Please ask us incase of any queries | | | | | | 1 2 | | | |
| 4 | | | | | | | | 1 | ber's r | uchy. | |
| • | Al-Enabled | Basic Media Advanced | | | | | | | | | |
| 0 | 0 | | | | | | | - | 0 | | |
| ¢. | and the second s | Connect an Agent : Select 🗸 | | | | | | Ľ | laer's r | uphy | |
| 0 | Map intents | | | | | | | r 2 | 0 | | |
| 4 | | | | | | | | 1 | iser's r | uply | |
| à | Live Agent | | | | | | | | | | |
| | 0 | | | | | | | - | 0 | | |
| | | | | | | | | Ľ | ber's r | upły | |
| | Only for WhotsApp | | | | | | | 1 4 | 0 | | |
| | | Concel | Save | | | | | - | | | |

SmatBot is now connected to your AI agent and ready to answer user queries!

Step 9:

Mapping your intents with SmatBot Flow:

- You can jump to a specific question in the SmatBot flow upon detection of any intent. This is used to achieve goal-based intents. E.g. For booking a hotel intent, you can map to the flow where SmatBot asks for details to book the hotel.
- Step 1:
 - For mapping SmatBot with your intents click on the Map intents button on the left side panel in the flow setup part of the chatbot.
- Step 2.
 - Now, choose an agent from the dropdown below. Connect an agent with which you want to map your chatbot.
- Step 3:
 - Once you select an agent, mapping options will be displayed below.
- Step 4:
 - Select the intent and the question jump from the dropdown as is shown below and click on Save.

| ← → C = app. | smatbot.com/bot?bot_id=6792 | &profile_id=411&tab=setup | Q 🖻 🛧 😁 🖽 🗉 💓 🗑 🔝 兽 🖈 🖬 🔮 | |
|------------------------|-----------------------------|--|--|---|
| 저 AliMail Enterprise E | 🗈 🏟 Settings 📼 ochp 🧿 | Online Logo Maker 🧿 Alibaba Mail 🚱 🧐 🎯 smatbot mail 🔺 doodleblue 🧧 | feltso 😵 🥮 s3 image 👿 Loan Vector Images | * |
| Bots > DEEPAK | WEBSITE TEST-Setup | Edit Question | × text | • |
| • | FAQs Setup | Note: Please press "Enter" for Paragraph break | 😳 o, ington (behault) 🗸 Providen | 1 |
| × | | Please ask us incase of any queries | × 4 0 s | |
| A | Ar-Enabled | Basic Media Advance | User's reply | |
| • | | Connect an Agent : Select v | User's reply | |
| 0 | Map intents | Select Intent Select Question | × 4 0 # | |
| 6 | Live Agent | Sove | | |
| C. ANTER | | + ADD | User's reply | |
| | Only For WhatsApp | Concel | Save | |

- Step 5:
 - To Set up a new jump with a new intent, click on the + button, and follow step 4.
- Step 6:

- Choose an agent from the dropdown below. Connect an agent you want to map your chatbot.

Step 10:

Mapping entities to the SmatBot questions:

- This is also used for goal-based intent. Let's say you want to book a hotel, we need 'check-in date', 'checkout date', 'number of people'. We first create a structured flow in SmatBot
 - A) Sure, I can help you book the hotel, May I know the check-in date? B) Thanks, May I also know the checkout date? C) Great, may I know the number of people?
- The bot can also accept the user query and process using NLP and jump to the above flow A-C and achieve the goal.
- There are two kinds of user queries, one with just intent, the second with intent along with entities. For example:
 - Case 1: I want to book a hotel (just intent: Booking Hotel)
 - Case 2: I want to book a hotel for three people (intent:- Booking Hotel and Entity: {"people":3})



- In the first case, the bot just found the intent to start the booking flow from A and achieve the goal. It can be done by mapping intents to flow, as explained in the last section.
- In the second case, the bot found intent and entities to start from flow A, but instead of asking for details, it prefills the entity value in the text field and asks the user to confirm the details and achieve the goal. It can be done by editing each possible question in the flow by enabling set dynamically and giving the session

variable name which should be the same as entity name and Alternate Question Text which would be asked by the bot instead of the normal question if entity value is found.

| M AliMai | l Enterprise E 💌 | 🔹 Settings 📼 cobp | 🕤 Online Logo Maker 🔇 Alibaba Mail 🔇 🤭 🤮 | 🗟 smatbot mail 🔺 doodleblue 🗧 feltso | S 🥚 s3 image | e 👿 Loan Vector In | nages | | |
|----------|------------------|-------------------|--|--------------------------------------|--------------|--------------------|----------------|-------------|---|
| | Bots > DEEPAK WE | BSITE TEST-Setup | Edit Question | | J | | test test gets | | * |
| + | | | Note: Please press "Enter" for Paragraph break | | | | | Desident | |
| | | FAQs Setup | Size 👻 Line Breaker 🖪 I 💷 🗮 | <u>U</u> % 🖬 | | | | | |
| | 0 | | Please ask us incase of any queries | | | | 1 4 | 0.0 | |
| 2 | 14.0 | | | | | | | | |
| | | Al-Enabled | | | _ | | | ra reply | |
| | | | Basic M | ledia Advanced | | | / 4 | | |
| | | | Time Base | ed Greeting O | | | Use | rs reply | |
| 10 | | | 90 | Copy | | | 1.4 | | |
| | | | Set | Dynamically | | | | - | |
| - | | Live Agent | Session Variable Name Price | Alternate Question Text | | | Use | rs reply | |
| 4 | | | Choose | e an Image | | | 1 4 | | |
| | | | Chee | oue a file | | | Use | ('s reply | |
| | | | - | legex | | | | | |
| | | Only For WhatsApp | | Concel | ve: | | - | •• | |
| | - | | | | | | 100 | Committee - | |

7. Settings (outer section)

Use the settings section of our dashboard to customize the settings of your bot.

Basic Settings

- You can enable or disable multilingual capabilities and choose the language preferences for your bot.
| 🙂 Sma | atBot × + | × | – a × |
|-------|--|--|-------------|
| | C app.smatbot.com/bot?tab=setting al Enterprise E | s&ibot id=22&profile id=411 Q, (c) 🛧 😨 🔠 🚺 📰 😾 😨 🔝 🎂 🛪 | ≓ □ ❹ : |
| | Bots > SmatBotDEM>Settings Bot Id:22 | T test | ifeltsa.com |
| + | S Longuage | Multi-lingual Bot 0 Enabled | |
| × | 🚡 Auto Trigger | | |
| | Reacklisting Urls | Default Language 0 | |
| ٠ | Whitelisting Urls | English v Save | |
| 9 | Consent Settings | Add Language | |
| 22 | Text to Speech Settings | 2 selected Save | |
| 0 | | ✓ English (Default) | |
| á | Bot Active Limings | Arabic - الحربية - | |
| å | Ban/Unban Users (Live Chat) | Basque - Euskara | |
| | Enabled Devices | Bengali - चारमा | |
| | S Whatsopp Restart Texts | Bosnian - bőznéen | |
| | Advanced Settings | Brazilian - Brazilian Portug | |
| | | Bulgarian – Българом | |

- Use Auto Triggers to make your bot appear or disappear automatically when a user visits or leaves your website.

| 💌 Sm | natBot × + | | | | | | × - | ø × |
|-------|---|---------------------------------|-------------------|-------------------------------|---------------|---------------------|--------------------------|-----|
| ← → | C @ app.smatbot.com/bot?tab=setting | gs⊥_id=22&profile_id=411 | | Q LÉ | 2 🗙 😗 🖽 | n 🖬 🖉 🖬 | e * = 🗆 | |
| M ARM | fail Enterprise E 💶 🏟 Settings 🐃 ccbp 🌘 | 🕤 Online Logo Maker 🔇 Alibaba N | leil 🗿 🞯 🙆 smetbo | ot mail 🔺 doodleblue 🔛 felts | o 🔇 🌻 s3 imag | e 🕅 Loan Vector Ima | iges | 10 |
| | Bots > SmatBotDEM>Settings Bot Id : 22 | | | | | T | test test.gfeltso.com | • - |
| + | | | | | | | | |
| ۵ | Sa Language | Auto Trigger 0 | | | | | | |
| × | 🐐 Auto Trigger | In Desktop | | Trigger time (in seconds) | | | | |
| | Blacklisting tide | | Enabled | 0 | | | | |
| • | Bidenising one | In Mobile | | Trigger time for mobile (in s | econds) | | | |
| - | Whitelisting Urls | | Enabled | 0 | | | | |
| ~ | Consent Settings | Refore the visitor is about to | exit | | | | | |
| | 🍃 Text to Speech Settings | | Enabled | | | | | |
| 6 | Bot Active Timings | | | | | | | |
| ai | 8 Ban/Unban Users (Live Chat) | Sa | /e | | | | | |
| - | Engbled Devices | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | |
| | Whatsopp Restart Texts | | | | | | | |
| | Advanced Settings | | | | | | | - |

- To disable your bot on specific pages, use Blacklisting URLs.

| 😑 Smi | utBot × + | Y - | a × |
|--|---|--|---|
| ↔ → M AliM | C 🔒 app.smatbot.com/bot?tab=setting: tail Enterprise E 🖸 🗘 Settings 🐃 ccbp 🕻 | ps⊥ id=22&profile id=411 Q iA 😧 🕅 4411 Q iA 100 🖬 I 🕱 🚳 smatbot mail 🛦 doodlebku 🔯 feitso 🗞 🧼 sì mage 💟 Loan Vector Images | 3 S S S S S S S S S S S S S S S S S S S |
| | Bots > SmatBotDEM>Settings Bot Id : 22 | T test test@felto.com | • |
| 6 × * • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • | Longuage Auto Trigger Blocklisting Uris Whitelisting Uris Consent Settings Text to Speech Settings | Blacklisting URLs 0 Note: Separate different URLs by a comma () . https://www.app.feltsa.com/account M Savo | |
| ्र क | Bot Active Timings Boh/Unban Users (Live Chat) Enabled Devices Whatsapp Restart Texts Advanced Settings | | 2 |

- To enable your bot on specific pages, use White listing URLs.

| <u>e</u> 5 | SmatEot × + | | | | ~ | 2 — —) | ø × |
|-----------------|---|---|------------------------------|---|--------------------------------|----------------|-----|
| ← - M Ali | C e appsmatbet.com/bot?tab=settings&lbot_id=22&profile_id=411 AlMal Enterprise E C for the settings to the settings of the logs Maker AlMal Bots > SmotBotDEM>Settings Bot Id: 22 | ebe Mai 📀 🤭 🌚 smatbot mail 🔺 doo | Q 년 화 odleblue 📴 feltso 📀 | BE I M ♥ s3 image ♥ Loan Vector in | è 🖈 loges test tost@f | ∎ Itso.com | • • |
| + 0 % + 0 0 % A | Longuage Auto Trigger Blackilisting URs Blackilisting URs Consent Settings Consent Settings Bot Active Timings Bon/Unbon Users (Live Chot) Enabled Devices Whotsapp Restort Texts Advanced Settings | nt URLs by a comma (,) X https://www.smatbot.com/whatsapp- Save Go ta | -chatbot X | | | | |

- You can ask for consent from the user before starting a conversation.

| 😑 Sm | atBot × + | | | | у – б | × |
|----------------|---|--|-------------------------|------------------------------|-------------------------|----|
| + → | C app.smatbot.com/bot?tab=setting | gs⊥_id=22&profile_id=411 | Q (r) \$ | 📵 H T 🕱 🗊 🖬 | • * = □ (| |
| M AiM | tail Enterprise E 💶 💠 Settings 🕮 ocbp (| 🖸 Online Logo Maker 🚱 Alibaba Mail 🚱 🞯 🙆 smatbot mai | 🔺 doodleblue 🧧 feltso 🤗 | 🌞 s3 image 🔯 Loan Vector Ima | jes | 30 |
| | Bots > SmatBotDEM>Settings Bot1d: 22 | | | | test test@feltso.com | ÷ |
| + | 🔓 Language | Consent Settings 0 | | | | |
| * | 🚡 Auto Trigger | For All Countries | | | | |
| | Blocklisting Uris | Enabled | | | | |
| • | Vhitelisting Urls | Only For Europe | | | | |
| 9 | | Disabled for Euro Countries | | | | |
| 2 ⁰ | | Consent Text | | | | |
| 0 | Text to Speech Settings | By clicking below, you consent to allow SmatBat to store and process the information collecting | | | | |
| র্না | Sot Active Timings | through this chat to assist you further. | | | | |
| # | Ban/Unban Users (Live Chat) | Save | | | | |
| - | Enabled Devices | | | | | |
| | Whatsapp Restart Texts | | | | | |
| | Advanced Settings | | | | | - |

Users can convert text questions into speech by enabling Text-to-Speech in the settings.

| 😐 Sm | satBot × + | | | | × | – a × |
|--|--|---|---------------------------|------------|--|-----------------------|
| ← → M AIN | Aail Enterprise E 💶 🏟 Settings 🐃 ocbp | gs⊥_id=22&profile_id=411 Online Logo Maker 🚱 Alibaba Mai 🕻 | 🔊 🤭 🍙 smatbot mail 🔺 door | 이 나가 🏚 📵 🛔 | E 🗊 🐹 🗑 🔝 💩 🗴 nage 💽 Loan Vector Images | i ≕ □ 0 : » |
| | Bots > SmatBotDEM>Settings Bot Id : 22 | | | | T test | atelteo.com 🔹 🕈 |
| + | S Language | Text-to-Speech Status 0 | | | | |
| % | 🌯 Auto Trigger | | Enabled | | | |
| | Riocklisting Urls | US - Female | ✓ Save | | | |
| ٠ | Whitelisting Urls | | | - | | |
| 0 | Consent Settings | | | | | |
| | Text to Speech Settings |) | | | | |
| 0 | Bot Active Timings | | | | | |
| a | Ban/Unban Users (Live Chat) | | | | | |
| 100 | Enabled Devices | | | | | |
| | S Whatsopp Restart Texts | | | | | |
| | Advanced Settings | | | | | |

- Choose the days and times that your bot should be active by using the "Bot Active Timings" feature in the settings

| e Sm | atBot × + | v — в х |
|-------|---------------------------------------|--|
| + > | C app.smatbot.com/bot?tab=settin | ngs⊥_id=22&profile_id=411 Q 🕑 🏠 😨 🖽 🍸 👹 🖗 🤿 🖽 🗊 🚺 👌 🐎 🗐 🔲 🧕 🗄 |
| A AIM | ail Enterprise E 💶 🏟 Settings 🕮 ocbp | 🖸 Online Lago Maker 🗞 Albaba Mail 😵 🤭 💿 smatbat mail 🔺 doodleblue 📓 feltso 😵 🌻 s3 image 💢 Loan Vector Images 😕 |
| | Bots > SmatBotDEM>Settings Bot Id: 22 | Test test direteacom |
| + | | |
| â | Conguage | Select days you want your bot to be active. |
| ж | 🌯 Auto Trigger | Monday Iuesday Wednesday Thursday Friday Saturday Sunday |
| * | Elacklisting Uris | Active Timines Timezone |
| • | 🔀 Whitelisting Urls | |
| 9 | Consent Settings | |
| 15 | Text to Speech Settings | Available oil of the time. |
| 5 | Bot Active Timings | |
| # | Ban/Unban Users (Live Chat) | Sove |
| | Enabled Devices | |
| | Whatsapp Restart Texts | |
| | R Advanced Settings | |

- Ban users by their IP address if they engage in any inappropriate behavior.

| 😑 Sm | natBot × + | | | | | ~ | - a × |
|----------------|---|--|-------------------|------------------------------|--------------|--|---------------------|
| | ail Enterprise E 😰 🏚 Settings 🐃 cobp | ngs⊥_id=22&profile_id=411 | aba Mail 🚱 😚 🎯 sm | atbot mail 🔺 doodleblue | Q, (c) ☆ (0) | 🔠 🝸 🐹 🗑 🔝 💩 🌧 Iimage 👿 Loan Vector Images | ≓ □ 0 : × |
| | Bots > SmatBotDEM>Settings Bot Id : 22 | | | | | test test@fel | tso.com • • |
| + & % | Language Auto Trigger Diacklisting Uris | Ban/Unban Users User Ip Address IP Address | | Reason for banning Reason | | Ban User | |
| • | Whitelisting Uris Consent Settings | Banned Users S.No | IP Address | | Reason | Actions | |
| 9 شا | Text to Speech Settings Bot Active Timings | | 189.112.220.1 | | Sporn | • | J |
| å | Ban/Unban Users (Uve Chot) Enabled Devices Whatsapp Restart Texts Advanced Settings | J | | | | | |

- Your bot can be enabled or disabled on a desktop or mobile device.

| 😑 Sm | atBot × + | | | | v - 0 | × |
|-------------------|--|------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|----------------------------|-------------------------|----|
| \leftrightarrow | C @ app.smatbot.com/bot?tab=settin | gs⊥_id=22&profile_id=411 | Q | 🗠 🌣 📵 🎛 🗉 🗱 🕅 |) 🛛 👌 🛪 🗊 🖬 🗿 | : |
| Mila M | lail Enterprise E 💶 🏟 Settings 🐃 ccbp | 🕤 Online Logo Maker 🛞 Alibaba Mail | 🗞 🧐 🔄 smatbot mail 🔺 doodleblue 🔽 | ieltso 😵 🌻 s3 image 👿 Loan | Vector Images | 39 |
| | Bots > SmatBotDEM>Settings Bot Id : 22 | | | | test test@feltso.com | · |
| + | | Enable Devices 0 | | | | |
| 24 | Auto Trigger | Desktop Users | Mobile Users | Save | | |
| | R Blacklisting Urls | L | | | | |
| • | P Whitelisting Urls | | | | | |
| 9 | Consent Settings | | | | | |
| 2. | . Text to Speech Settings | | | | | |
| 9 | Bot Active Timings | | | | | |
| | 🛞 Ban/Unban Users (Live Chat) 🖌 | 4 | | | | |
| can. | Enabled Devices |] | | | | |
| | 😒 Whatsapp Restart Texts | | | | | |
| | R Advanced Settings | | | | | |

- You can provide a WhatsApp Restart message.

| 😑 Sma | tBot × + | v – o x |
|-------------------------------|--|---|
| $\leftrightarrow \rightarrow$ | C app.smatbot.com/bot?tab=setting | gs⊥_jd=22&profile_jd=411 Q 🖗 🏠 🔞 🏦 🍸 💹 🔞 🏚 🗐 🚺 |
| M AliMa | ail Enterprise E 💿 🏚 Settings 🐃 coop | 🖸 Online Logo Maker 🔇 Alibaba Mail 😵 🤓 🍙 smatbot mail 🔺 doodleblue 🧧 feitso 😵 🏮 s3 image 💆 Loan Vector Images 🛛 » |
| | Bots > SmatBotDEM>Settings Bot Id : 22 | Tatt Matchelics.com |
| + | | |
| ٥ | Canguage | Whatsapp Restart Texts 0 |
| 2 | 🚡 Auto Trigger | Note: Separate different string by commo(.) or Enter. |
| | Rlacklisting Urls | HI × Hello × menu × |
| • | P Whitelisting Urls | Save |
| 9 | Consent Settings | |
| 25 | Text to Speech Settings | |
| 0 | in the space actings | |
| जी | Bot Active Timings | |
| đi | Ban/Unban Users (Live Chat) | 4 |
| | Enabled Devices | |
| | 🗴 Whatsapp Restart Texts | |
| | R Advanced Settings | |

Advanced Settings

- Enable or disable -
 - Bot status, Voice input, Mobile OTP & Email validation and WhatsApp OTP Notifications.
- Store user's session up to 24 hours
- Accept only business emails
- Enable data masking
- Track adwords
- Add a delay in responses
- Turn on revisit authentication.

| 😑 Sma | atBot × + | | | | v - | - • × |
|-------------------------------|--|--------------------------------------|------------------------------|-------------------------------|-------------------------------|-------|
| $\leftrightarrow \rightarrow$ | C @ app.smatbot.com/bot?tab=setting | s⊥_id=22&profile_id=411 | | Q 🖻 🛊 🎯 🏼 | 🖭 🐹 🔍 🔝 👌 🖈 🗉 | |
| M AliMa | ail Enterprise E 💶 🌣 Settings 🕮 cdop 🤇 | 🕽 Online Logo Maker 🔇 Alibaba Mail 🛛 | 🕙 🥶 🌚 smatbot mail 🔺 | doodleblue 🔯 feltso 📀 🌻 s3 im | age 👿 Loan Vector Images | > |
| | Bots > SmatBotDEM>Settings Bot Id : 22 | | | | T test | e • |
| - | | | | | | |
| + | | | | | 2 8 | ٦ L |
| ۵ | Canguage | Bot Status | Voice Input | Mobile OTP Validation | Skip OTP Validation | |
| 36 | 🍒 Auto Trigger | | | OTP Provider : Default | | |
| | P Blacklisting Uris | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | |
| • | | | | | | |
| _ | 📝 Whitelisting Uris | | | | | |
| | Consent Settings | Email OTP Validation | Whatsapp OTP Notification | Store User Session | Restrict to Company Emails | |
| 21 | . Text to Speech Settings | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | |
| 0 | Bot Active Timings | | | | | |
| 511 | | | | | | |
| a | (8) Ban/Unban Users (Live Chat) | Remove Branding | Data Masking | Delay In Responses | Revisit Authentication | |
| | Enabled Devices | | - | | | |
| | S Whatsapp Restart Texts | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | |
| | Advanced Settings | | Upgrade | | | |
| | · Advanced seconds | | | | | J 👩 |

8. Whats App (outer section)

WhatsApp Chatbots & Billing



• Add image

WhatsApp is a platform with over 2 billion users in 180+ countries around the world. WhatsApp bots can be used for automating customer support, e-commerce, booking appointments, showcasing products/services, and much more.

To use WhatsApp Bots, you will need a dedicated WhatsApp number. For more details on applying for this number please <u>click here.</u>

There are two kinds of 'Conversations' in WhatsApp.

| 8:15 | 345 |
|--|---|
| Anne, your flight to San Juan, PR on 21-JUNE at 8:00AM PST has | Hey, just checking in on the delivery of my last order. When is , |
| been delayed. Your new departure time is 8:30AM PST. | Your last order, #3536, has an estimated delivery date of 15-JURL |
| Anne, your flight to San Juan, PR on 21-JUNE at 8:30AM PST is denation in 15 mins at Gate 38 | Wow, thanks for the fast response 🥥 Today |
| 815.AU | Get excited Order #3536 has been delivered. been w |
| Business Initiated Conversation | User Initiated Conversation |

- A conversation is a 24-hour window during which you can send an infinite number of messages.
- User-Initiated Conversations:
 - When a user sends a message and a business responds to it, a conversation session is started, which is valid for 24 hours.
- Business-Initiated Conversation
 - If a business sends the first message, the conversation begins instantly and is valid for 24 hours from the moment the message is sent.

WhatsApp prices depend on the number of conversations. During a 24-hour conversation, one can exchange an unlimited number of messages with no extra charge. The price of each conversation varies per country.

Please find details about location wise billing here.

Important Note:

Pricing might change based on the WhatsApp API provider. Each provider has their own pricing.

Meta:

If you connect to Meta directly instead of any providers, you need to enter your credit card information into FB Business Manager. You will be charged monthly based on your usage. SmatBot charges a margin amount for each conversation.

To learn more about Meta's pricing structure, <u>click here</u>. To know about SmatBot's pricing <u>click</u> <u>here</u>

360Dialog:

All providers, such as 360Dialog, have their own pricing per conversation, similar to Meta. SmatBot charges a margin amount for each conversation.

To learn more about 360 Dialog's pricing structure, click here.

WhatsApp E-commerce & Catalogue

Pre-Requisites

- 1. Facebook Business Manager
- 2. Catalog in Commerce Manager
- 3. Business API Connected to Facebook
- 4. Phone Number
- 5. WhatsApp Business API met

Step 1:

- Create a catalog in Facebook Business Commerce Manager and add items.
 - To add items in the catalog, click on Add items.



- Choose one of the options listed to connect.

| SmatBot | × SmatBot Al Chatbot for | all your X 🔗 Meta Business Suite X 🕫 Commerce Manager X + | ~ - 0 × |
|--------------------------------|-------------------------------|---|-------------|
| + -> C business.fa | cebook.com/commerce/catalogs/ | 949097439342298/data_sources/add7business_jd=2438679909480544 ©, 🔄 🛨 😨 🎛 🍸 💓 💟 🔝 | 8 # ≕ □ 0 : |
| Meta Commerce Manager | | Add items | |
| SmatBot | | Choose your preferred option | |
| Test 1 (949097439342298) | • | Manual Fill In a form to manually add items to your ostalogue. Recommended for a small invertiony that rarely changes. | |
| D Overview | | Learn more | |
| Catalogue | ^ | Data feed Use a spreadsheet or file to add and update your items automatically. Recommended if you manage inventory in a program such as Excel or Boogle Sheets. Learn more | |
| Sets Issues Data sources | _ | A Partner platform Use a partner platform such as Shopily or BigCommerce to automatically add items from your website. | |
| Events | | Learn more | |
| F Ads 핅 Sales ⓒ Settings | | Pixel Use your Facebook pixel to automatically add items from your website. Recommended if you use a pixel for dynamic add. Learn more | |
| | | Cannel | |

Add the items to the catalog by using any of the following:

| 🖳 SmatBot | × 🔄 SmatBo | et Al Chatbot for all your 🗙 📔 ၹ Meta Business Suite | 🗙 🙉 Commerce Manager 🛛 🛪 | + - | o × |
|---|----------------------------------|---|--|--|--------------------|
| ← → ♂ 🛑 business.face M AliMail Enterprise E 💶 🔹 | ebook.com/comn Settings 🕮 ccb | nerce/catalogs/949097439342298/products/add_from_j p 🔇 Onine Logo Maker 🔇 Alibaba Mail 🔇 😁 | oartner_platform?business_id=2 Q. ம் ☆ | 😉 🗄 🝸 💓 🐨 🔝 💩 🌧 🛒 🗖 🎒 s3 image 📝 Loan Wettor Images | 1 () : » |
| ^{∞ Meto} Commerce Manager | Ξ | Select your partner platform Select a partner platform to add items to your catalo | gue. For some partners, you may need to finish setting | ★ Manage your inventory easily | |
| SmatBot | | up directly on their site. | | You can continue to manage your inventory from your partner platform. Any | |
| Test 1 (949097439342298) | • | 🛐 shopify | | changes made to these items will automatically update your catalogue. Sell on Facebook and Instaoram | |
| Overview | | | | Once your items have been added to your | |
| Catalogue | ^ | channeladvisor | CommerceHub | catalogue, you can use your partner platform to create and customise a shop to sell your items. | |
| Sets | | ◆ feedonomics | COMMERCE | Learn more | |
| Data sources Events | | adMixt | DataCaciques | | |
| FJ Ads | | | | | |
| 📅 Sales | | | Zenteil | | |
| Settings | | Ούιρτ | Zentali | | |
| | | 10100 COMMERCE | | | |

- 1. Google Spreadsheet (Data Feed)
 - a. You can update data frequently by selecting the time in your commerce manager and typing in the spreadsheet URL.

- 2. Facebook Pixels
 - a. If you choose Pixels, a Meta tag is given that must be added to your commerce website to update the details automatically.
- 3. Manual Entry
 - a. This method is not recommended.
- 4. Connecting A Partner Platform
 - a. Connecting with a partner platform such as Shopify.

Step 2:

- Go to the Facebook WhatsApp manager and connect the catalog to your WhatsApp Number.
 - To do this, **Open Facebook Business Manager and click on Settings.**

| Smelbol X | Smatsot | A Chatbot X | -commerc × N | teta Business Suite X 🚺 Meta business Suite X 🚺 (d. | () Business settings × + · · | ц <u></u> |
|-------------------------------|------------|--------------------------------|---------------------|--|--|-----------|
| ← → C ^a business.f | acebook.co | m/settings/people/1000764865 | 45315?business_id=2 | 438679909480544 🔍 🖄 🏠 | 😑 H 🗈 🗰 🖲 🙆 🗯 🗮 | |
| M AliMail Enterprise E 💶 🕴 | Settings | 🎫 ocbp 🧿 Online Logo Maker | r 🔇 Alibaba Mail | 😵 🞯 🔄 smatbot mail 🔺 doodleblue 🔛 feltso 🚱 | 🥮 s3 image 🛛 Loan Vector Images | 30 |
| Meta Business settings | ≡ | People | | | | * |
| SmatBot | • | Filter by name, ID or email a. | n Q Add | Raghava reddy Admin access · Developer · reddy22441@gmail.com | Remove | Edit |
| BI lisers | ^ | Raghava reddy | ۲ | A Add Assets | | |
| People | | Sachin smatbot | ۲ | Assigned assets | A Add Assets | |
| Partners | | Sentosh Thota | ۲ | Here are the assets that Raghava reddy can acces remove assets. | s. View and manage their permissions. Add or | |
| System users | ^ | Sreemayi Sruthi | ۲ | Search by ID or name | Q, | |
| Pages | | | | Pages | | |
| Ad accounts | | | | D My Page | v | |
| Business asset groups | | | | Instagram accounts | | |
| Instagram accounts | | | | 🛕 @raghava_0007 | ~ | |
| WhatsApp accounts | | | | Catalogues | | |
| R. Data sources | ~ | | | Fruits and vegetables | ~ | |
| @ 🖉 Q @ | E | | | Products | v | |

- In the Accounts section, click on WhatsApp Accounts => Settings => WhatsApp Manager.

| SmatBot X | SmatBot | Al Chatsot 🗙 🔇 whatsapp-e-commerci 🗙 🕅 |) Meta Business Suite 🗴 🛛 🔿 Meta Business Suite 🗴 🔿 (62) Business Settings 🗙 🕂 🔍 | - 🛚 × |
|-----------------------|-----------------|---|--|---------|
| ← → C 🔒 business.f | acebook.cor | m/settings/whatsapp-business-accounts/1094984 | 48357247?business_id=2438679909480544 🔍 🖉 🎓 🔞 麗 🖫 🐹 🗑 🔝 🤚 🇯 | ≓ 🖬 🔕 i |
| M Almai Enterprise E. | ≠ settings ≡ | WhatsApp accounts | ai 🥪 🥶 😡 smatoot mail 🔺 ooooleesue 🙀 tetso 🥪 🥌 sa image 💟 Loan vector images | 39 |
| SmatBet | | Fifter by name or ID Q + Add | SmatBot Owned by: SmatBot ID: 109498448357247 | Remove |
| | | SmetBot | Add People | |
| 剧 Users | × | SmatBot Testing | People Partners Settings Pages | |
| Pages | ^ | Smetbot Official | No address Currency | 1 |
| Ad accounts | | Smatbot Official | eur euro Time zone Asia/Kolkata | - 1 |
| Apps | | | Business name SmatBot | - 1 |
| WhatsApp accounts | | | Business verification | |
| 😞 Data sources | × | | Account status | - 1 |
| Brand safety | ~ | | Payment method | |
| Registrations | ~ | | accurate of the second se | |
| @ 🖉 Q @ | Ð | | WhatsApp Manager | |

- In WhatsApp Manager, click on **Catalog** and then on **Choose a Catalog**.

| ∠ → C A business fa | sebook com | /wa/mana | an/catalo | a linking | /2husing | er id=24 | 3867990 | 94805448 | waha idu | -10949 | 0.44935 | 247 (| 9 14 | * | 12 17 | | | | | | |
|--|------------|----------|-----------|-----------|----------|----------|---------|---------------|----------|--------|-------------------|------------------|--------|-----|------------|--------|------------|-----|---|----------|---|
| M AliMail Enterprise E. | Settinos | ccho | O Online | Lone Mal | cer. G | Alibaba | Mai G | M 6 | omathot | mail | A dood | eblue | feltso | | mage 1 | Loan V | ector imac | 105 | | | |
| | _ | | | | | | | 0 4 | | | - | | | | | | | | | | |
| X Meta | = | Catalo | gue | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | 5 | matBot • | • |
| whatsApp Manage | r | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| SmatBot | * | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Overview Overview Account tools Insights Message templates Phone numbers Cetalowee | ^ | | | | | | Sh | owcase y | Conne | ect a | catale nd serv | ogue ces to c | custom | ers | | | | | | | |
| Litalogue | | | | | | | 7 | \rightarrow | Choo | n Wha | lsApp. | le | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |

- Now, choose one of the catalogs from your Business and click on the **Connect Catalog** button.
- If you don't have any catalog's, create a Catalog in the Commerce Manager.

Great! You have connected a catalog to your WhatsApp business number.

Step 3:

- Login to your Smatbot Account.
- Open your bot and go to the **Install section** \Rightarrow **WhatsApp Installation**.
- Under WhatsApp Catalog section, click on the Connect with Facebook button.



- Once your Facebook account is connected, go to **Flow Setup** and add WhatsApp Catalog questions to your flow

| SmatBot | 🗙 🔳 SmatBot | × + | ✓ – σ > |
|-----------------|---|--------------------|--|
| $\rightarrow c$ | app.smatbot.com/bot?bot_id=22&profile_id=4118 | Stab=setup | er ☆ 🐵 🖩 🗵 🕷 🗊 🖬 🗐 🌢 🌧 斗 🔲 🔕 |
| AliMail Er | iterprise E 🖸 🏟 Settings 🐃 oobp 🧿 Online Logo M | aker 🔇 Alibaba Mai | ail 📀 😚 🗟 smatbot mail 🔺 doodleblue 🔯 feltso 🚱 🥚 s3 image 👿 Loan Vector Images 🔹 |
| B | ots > SmatBotDEM>Setup | View Setup | up Flow Setup Install |
| + | Live Agent | | Search Q English (Default) Y Preview |
| Ô | | | your choice except whatsapp. |
| × | Hisman Handover | × | 🛍 A dedicated Customer Success Manager will be assisting you within 🕜 🏦 🗂 🗈 |
| * | | | |
| 0 | Only For WhatsApp | × | For all custom integrations, please contact us at support@smatbol.com, Additional charges will incur as per the requirement. |
| 9 | Templater Users Merry List Buttons | | requirements |
| 2.0 | Resource Resource | | <table-cell> Talk to cur live agent 🥒 🗈 🕯</table-cell> |
| 0 | Cotation | 2 | User's reply |
| á | | \rightarrow | |
| 8 | Only For Instagram | | 🙀 Adding the WhatsApp Catalog. 🖉 👘 🖻 |
| _ | | | User's reply |
| | Oenario | | |

- Click on edit icon to submit the Catalog ID.
- You can choose to enable Razor pay payment option. To do this, submit the Razor pay secret ID and Razor pay secret key.

| 🚍 SmatBot | × + | | v - a |
|------------------------|---|--|--|
| ← → C â ap | p.feltso.com/bot?bot_id=238 | 4&profile_id=411&tab=setup | २. ४ ४ 😌 🔠 🗉 👹 🐨 🔝 👌 🛊 🗐 🔕 |
| M AliMail Enterprise E | 💶 🏟 Settings 🛸 oobp | 🗿 Online Logo Maker 🚱 Alibaba Mail 😵 🤭 🍙 smatbot mail 🔺 doodleblue | 😰 feltso 📀 🍺 s3 image 👿 Loan Vector Images |
| Bots > Whatsa | pp Catalog-Setup | Edit Question | X Inter text text |
| • | | Note: Please press "Enter" for Paragraph break | 🕒 o Ingrian (Default) 🤟 Preview |
| ۵ | | Size * Line Breaker B I 😑 🖄 🐿 | 44.0.8 |
| × | | Adding the WhatsApp Catalog. | |
| | Map intents | | User's reply |
| 0 | Live Agent | Daole Martin Arban | 2 G A 1 |
| | | | User's reply |
| | | Catalog Id * | |
| 0 | | 1379608685825710 | × 0 • |
| - | Only For What Age | Razorpay Payment Options O | Unarth reply |
| | · • · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · | Disable Razorpay Payments | × 4 0 # |
| • | Catalog | Razorpay Key * Razorpay Secret ID * | (Decourse) |
| | Only For inclusion | kjhj vhgvgh | |
| | | | |
| 0 | 0 0 | Cancel | Same |

How to Navigate :

- Once everything is done, the WhatsApp message will look like this.
- You can choose any item and add it to the cart. To view the selected items, click on the **Cart Icon**.

| Total In this business norths with other companies to manage this dut. Click to term mer. Image: The Menus anythine to start from beginning | ÷91 91543 64806 | | , , Detai click here t | ls view cart 👄 📜 🖙 … |
|--|---|-----------------|----------------------------|--|
| Intervent | | | | |
| In this business works with other companies to manage this dut. Click to keam more. If is to during a start from beginning as AM Mutuic Monto is your mome Type Merna anytime to start from beginning as AM Marken Redrig as AM Store Store Tore works Checkout our Products A start of the during as AM Marken Redrig as AM Marken Redrig as AM Marken Redrig as AM Marken Redrig as AM Marken Redrig as AM Marken Redrig as AM Marken Redrig as AM Marken Redrig as AM | | | VISEX | |
| • This business works with other companies to manage this chat. Click ta karm mare. Initia Hallo Type Menu anytime to start from beginning Jas AM Raghaves Reddy Jas AM Raghaves Reddy Jas AM Store Demo Defectory our Products Automation MESSAGE BUSINESS | | | NUU # | |
| Heillo Type Menu anytime to start from beginning _366,AA What is your mame Type Menu anytime to start from beginning _366,AA Maghava Reddy _356,AAA.// Raghava Reddy _356,AAA.// Raghava Reddy _356,AAA.// Store Store Store Store Store Checkout our Products366,AAA | This business works with other of | | nore. | e erocs |
| Type Menu anytime to start from beginning 336.AM What is your name 336.AM Type Menu anytime to start from beginning 336.AM Raghave Reddy 336.AM Store 2.6m Store 2.6m Checkout our Products 336.AM | | | | Crocs |
| Store Store Store Store Checkout our Products Store | Type Menu anytime to start from be | ginning and the | | |
| Type Menu anytime to start from beginning 336.644 Raghava Reddy 336.644.47 Store 1/102/2000/200723/CFm 2 fams 2 fams Checkout our Products 336.644 | What is your name | | | |
| Raghavs Reddy 306 AM - V Lade the Lunde https://arusta.gio.com/media.f/yg_master/rost/20200723/CTm P/Silve 2 dems Checkoot.our Products Store St | Type Menu anytime to start from be | ginning 3.36 AM | s30 | |
| Store 25 James Checkout our Products Deckout our Products | | Raghava Reddy | 336 MM v// taste the tund | er ains com/medias/sus-master/root/20200723//Tm |
| Checkout our Products BAZ AM | Store 23 items | | P/5f19acl37cd MODEL.jpg | b8c2207843537/-473Wx593H-460532539-navy- |
| | Checkout our Products | | | |

- If you wish to send a message, then type the message and click on the **send button**.



| +91 91543 64806 | | | ← Your cart | |
|--|-----------------------|---------|--------------------------------------|----|
| | | | 1 item R5.00 (estimated) | |
| | | | 530 | |
| | | ge here | | |
| This business works with other companies to manage the | | | Need this product by End of the week | |
| Hello | hi 336 AM | 4 | | ⇒[|
| Type Menu anytime to start from beginning 3:36 AM | | | | |
| | Raghawa Reddy 3:36 AM | | | |
| Store 23 theres | | | | |
| Checkout our Products 3:36 AM | | | | |
| | | | | |
| | | | | |

- If the payment option has been enabled, the bot will generate a UPI payment link using the Razorpay API. Otherwise, it will proceed directly to the next question instead of giving the payment link.

| +91 91543 64806 | |
|---|--|
| Hello | |
| Type Menu anytime to start from beginning | |
| What is your name | |
| Type Menu anytime to start from beginning 415 AM | |
| | Raghava Reddy 415 AM |
| Store 2 mms Oneckout our Products 415 AM | |
| | |
| | The titem Concernment to the week and the second to the second |
| Thanks for shopping with us RAGHAWA REDDY 👹 . Total cost for selected Products is : 15 4:16 AM | |
| You can pay through here: https://rzp.io/i/HsPvBRfg | |

WhatsApp Template Messages

WhatsApp templates or business-initiated messages can be used to send promotions, discounts, information, and much more.

Use SmatBot to send bulk messages to your existing customers or prospective leads.

Step 1:

To begin, Go to Bot Set up in the dashboard. Click on WhatsApp Template Messages.



Step 2:

Connect with your WhatsApp Business account.

- From the drop-down box, Choose the Meta Official Business Provider name through which you registered your WhatsApp Business API Account.
- Provide the following details WhatsApp Business API, WhatsApp Name, WhatsApp Number, Product Token and then click on Save.

| SmatBot | × | + | | v – Ø |
|--|------------------------------|------------------------|---|---|
| ← → C | app.smatbot.com | n/bot?tab=setup⊥_i | d=6792&profile_id=411 | Q (2) (2) (2) (2) (2) (2) (2) (2) (2) (2) |
| Rolling Control of Con | | | | |
| + | | | New Whatsapp Account | × |
| ٥ | | 0 | Add New WhatsApp Account | |
| × | Mage (| | Meta | connected any WhatsApp Accounts |
| | installation | instation | Whatsapp Name | New WhatsApp Account |
| | 0 | 0 | T Enter your phone number | |
| 4 | Messenger | Wordpress | Enter your product taken | st your Facebook Business ID. |
| • | matamatouri | Personances | Enter your namespace | Connect with Facebook |
| 4 | C | Ð | Enter your Meta phone number id | |
| | Landing Page Installation | Widget Installation | Enter your Whatsoop Rusiness Account Id | |
| | | | | |
| | | | Cancel | Save |

Great! You have successfully connected your WhatsApp Business account.

Step 3:

Navigate to Create Templates & Click on Add Template

| SmatBot | × + | | | | | Y | - 21- | ø | × |
|------------------|----------------------------|-----------------------|-------------------------|---|-------------------|--------|-----------|--------|---|
| → C â app.sma | atbot.com/bot?tab=whatsapp | o_template_messages⊥_ | id=13563&profile_id=411 | Q 19 11 | 🕒 📵 🔣 🔟 🐹 🐨 🛄 | * | =1 | 0 | : |
| Bots > MBG Copy> | Whatsapp Template Mess | ages | 002 | | . | test | Melteo.co | m •• | |
| | | WhatsApp Template | • Details | | Sync with Faceboo | ok 🕇 4 | Add Tem | nplate | |
| View Sent M | ote Messages | Name | Category | Preview | Language | | | | |
| Download St | ent Messages | ertyuiocvbn | TRANSACTIONAL | hi there raghava here ndjitol | •• | | 0 | = | |
| Create Terri | plates | helio_warld | ACCOUNT_UPDATE | Welcome and congratulatio. | en_US | 80 | D | | |
| | | marketing | MARKETING | hi this ma marketing sampl | en | æ | C | | |
| á | | neru_123 | MARKETING | Hello {[1]], I know you are do_ | en_US | æ | C | | |
| i. | | otp | OTP | otp sample template please | en | ۲ | ē | π. | |
| | | raghaav | MARKETING | Hi there raghava heer how α_{\ast} | 81 | ۲ | 6 | | |

- You can create text, media or interactive template messages.
- Name the template. Make sure the name does not have more than 512 characters. Select the language and category.
- Choose from the dropdown list and insert the required header.
- The content field in the Body is limited to 1024 characters.
- Add buttons as required.
- For button text, the character limit is 20. Click on submit.
- You can add variables in the Body such as recipient name to make it dynamic and interactive.

| SmatEot × + | | | | | ∨ – ø × |
|--|-------------------------------|----------------------|--------------------------------|---------------------|----------------------------|
| ← → C 🔒 app.smatbot.com/bot?tab=wha | tsapp_template_messages⊥_id= | 13563&profile_id=411 | Q L | e 🖈 🙂 👪 🗉 👹 | . 🛛 👌 🛪 🛒 🖬 🔕 🗄 |
| 💐 AliMail Enterprise E 💶 🏟 Settings 🐃 oobp | 👩 Online Logo Maker 😵 Alibaba | a Mai 🕲 🧐 🎯 sm | atbot mail 🔺 doodleblue 🚾 felt | so 🔇 🌻 s3 image 👿 l | oan Vector Images >> |
| Bots + MBG Copy+Whatsopp Template I | Create a Template Me | ssage | | × | ten best |
| Send Template Messages | tost | | 🚯 мвб Сору 🖿 | C Sync of | th Facebook 🕈 Add Templote |
| X View Seri Messages | Marketing | ~ | SH ZTO AK | rage | |
| Download Sent Messages | English (en) | ~ | | | • 0 # |
| Create Templates | HEADER | | Hildless Middless | | |
| 6 | IMAGE | ~ | emotion | | |
| • | https://custpostimages. | s3.ap-south-lamaz | Teo good | | • 0 = |
| 4 | BODY | ٢ | Unhappy | | |
| å - | HE[[1]] How are you? | | | | |
| | | e | 🕲 Type a message 🛛 🗞 🙆 | 0 | • • • |
| | | | | | * 0 * |

Facebook takes 24-48 business hours to review the template. You can see the submitted, approved or rejected status beside your template name. You can re-apply for the template if it gets rejected.

Step 4:

Now, let's see how to Send Template Messages.

- In the Single Template, select your template and add the recipient number.
- In the Header Param, add the image URL and in Body Param, add the name of the recipient & click on send. Great, your template message has been sent.
- Add file URL in Header Param if it is a media template.
- Add variables, such as the name of the recipient, in the Body Parameters.
- You can also send variables in Button Params in case there are custom URLs.
- Now, click on Send.
- Your template message has been sent.

| SmatBot × + | | v - a |
|---|--|---|
| ← → C a app.smatbot.com/bot?tab= | whatsapp_template_messages⊥_id=13563&profile_id=411 | 역 🖻 ☆ 🐵 표 🗉 🕷 🐨 🔝 兽 🦈 🗐 🔮 |
| M AliMail Enterprise E 💶 💠 Settings 🐃 c | bp 🧿 Online Logo Maker 🚱 Alibaba Mail 😵 🤭 🍙 smatbot mail | 🔺 doodlebiue 🔯 feltso 📀 😑 s3 image 🔀 Loan Vector Images |
| Bots > MBG Copy>Whatsapp Templ | ite Messages | test test@feltza.com |
| | | |
| <u> </u> | Single Template Bulk Template Schedule | Campaign History |
| Send Template Messages | | |
| X View Sent Messages | test_neeti 🖌 👻 | 😰 MBG Copy 🔹 🦕 i |
| Download Sent Messages | - 9705738759 | Message Header Section |
| 0 | | Message Body Section |
| Create Templates | en | Neuropy Tooler Section |
| 25 | Header Video Param | Concel |
| | Body Param - 1 | |
| | | |
| | send | |
| 4 | | — |
| | | |
| | | 🕲 Type a message 👒 🙆 🚺 |
| | | |
| | ← | |

- For Bulk Template, upload a CSV file below 2 MB & send.

-

| SmatBot | × + | | v – Ø |
|--------------------------------|---|--|------------------------------------|
| ← → C M AliMail Enterpr Bots > | appsmatbot.com/bot?tab=whatsapp_ ise E ✿ Settings = cbp ● C MBG Copy>Whatsapp Template Messa | template_messages&tbot_id=13563&profile_id=411 niine Logo Maker 🕐 Albaba Mail 🔗 🤭 🍙 smatbot maii 🔺 ges | Q L2 ☆ O H I M V Los Vector Images |
| | Send Template Messages View Sant Massages Download Sent Messages Create Templates | Single Template Suff. Template Suff. Template Schedule Upload your cay which has all your conjucts along with the template Note: follow cay format for reference File size should be less than 2mb Send | Campaign History |
| | ← | | 🕲 Type a message 🔌 🖻 🔮 |

- If you want to include any media files, go to the WhatsApp Section in the dashboard and click on Upload Media. Copy the URL & paste it in the CSV file.



- For format reference, you can download the file. Make sure to follow the same format.
- You can also schedule the required WhatsApp template message according to the time and date.

| SmatBot | × + | | v – a |
|---|---|--|--|
| ← → C a a M AlMail Enterprise E Bots > MBG | app.smatbot.com/bot?tab=whatsapp | _template_messages⊥_id=13563&profile_id=411 Online_Logo Maker 🚱 Alibaba Mail 🚱 🧐 🍙 smatbot mail 🔺 agges | Q, L2 ☆ ⊕ H II M V II → ★ I I Q doodleblue II felto I ⊕ s3 image II Loan Vector Images I text text@feltoa.com |
| Creating Stand | t Template Massages r Sent Messages niload Sent Messages Ite Templates | Single Templote Bulk Templote Schedule Note: follow csv format for reference File sites should be less than 2mb pampaign Name India and sit Lanka, IST, mm/dd/yyyy 12 AM 00 00 00 | Campaign History |
| | ← | | C Type a message 🔌 🖻 🔇 |



_

- In campaign history, you have the entire list of scheduled campaigns.

| | × + | | | | | v – в х |
|------------|---------------------------------|-------------------------------|-----------------------|---------------------------|------------------------------|-------------------|
| + > | C app.smatbot.com/bot?tab=v | vhatsapp_template_messages&bo | t_id=13563&profile_id | (=411 Q | 16 🏠 🙆 H 🗵 📜 🖲 1 | 3 👌 🛪 ≕/ 🖬 🗿 : |
| t contract | sats > MBG Copy>Whatsapp Templa | te Messages | | | and 🔮 🖕 is mage 🔬 countrated | T test@feltea.com |
| + 6 | Send Template Messages | Single Template | Bulk Template | Schedule Campaign History | | |
| × | View Sent Messages | Compaign | Status | Scheduled Time | Created At | Url |
| * | Download Sent Messages | Testing | scheduled | 24 Aug 2022 12:50:00 | 24 Aug 2022 12:47:52 | Download |
| 9 | Create Templates | Test | scheduled | 23 Aug 2022 16:50:00 | 23 Aug 2022 16:46:24 | Download |
| ±** | | | | | | |
| 0 | | | | | | |
| র্জা | | | | | | |
| 8 | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | |

- By applying filters, such as date, template name, and status, you can see detailed data in 'View Sent Messages'

| SmatBot X | + | | | | × 6 - v |
|---|---|---------------------------------------|--|------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| ← → C a app.smatbot.com// M AliMail Enterprise E C ¢ Setting | bot?tab=whatsapp_template_mes is 🏨 ccop 🥑 Online Logo Maki | sages⊥_id=135638 er 🎯 Alibaba Mail | kprofile_id=411 ⓒ ⓒ ☆ smatbot mail ▲ doodleblue | Q 년 ☆ 🙃 🎛 Q feltso 🚱 🌻 s3 image | II I III III IIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIII |
| + S Send Template Message | p Template Messages Search | Phone Q | Select Date 🏥 Templat | es 🗸 Status | View Data |
| View Sant Massages | es | er Template er Name | Whatsapp Message id | Status WhatsA Respon | pp Created At |
| Create Templates | 91902844 | 4927 neru_123 | wamid.HBgMOTESMDI4NDQdMdzFQIA_ | read Succes | a 08 Sep 2022 18:48:00 |
| 2 | 91902844 | 3323 neru_123 | warnid.HBgMOTESMDI4NDQzMztzFQIA_ | failed | 08 Sep 2022 18:40:32 |
| 21 21 | 91952723 | 1087 neru_123 | wamid.HBgMOTESNTI3MijWwMOg3FQL. | read Succes | s 08 Sep 2022 18:38:44 |
| | 91814947 | 1995 neru_123 | wamid.HBgMOTE4MTQ5NDexOTkIFQL | read Succes | is 08 5ep 2022 18:37:49 |
| | 9(0)4847 | 995 neru_123 | | redo Succes | is 00.94b 2022 10:37/64 |

- You can also download sent messages with the template name & custom date.

-

| Sma | atEot × + | v – ø |
|---------------------------------|--------------------------------------|--|
| \leftrightarrow \rightarrow | C 🔒 app.smatbot.com/bot?tab=wha | atsapp_template_messages⊥_id=13563&profile_id=411 🔍 🕑 🖈 📵 🔀 🍸 🐹 🖗 🔝 🔞 🔅 🛪 🗐 🚺 |
| M AIM | ail Enterprise E 💶 🂠 Settings 🐃 oobp | 🧿 Online Logo Maker 🚱 Albaba Mail 🔇 🤭 💿 smatbot mail 🛦 doodleblue 🧧 feltso 🔇 🌞 s3 image 💆 Loan Vector Images |
| | Bots > MBG Copy>Whatsapp Template | Messages test test@feltes.com |
| + | | |
| 0 | Send Template Messages | Note: Download your Whatsapp Template data in CSV format. |
| | | Templates From Date To Date |
| | View Sent Messages | Select Templates - mm/dd/yyyy 🗖 mm/dd/yyyy 🗗 Download |
| - | Download Sent Messages | |
| | Create Templates | |
| | | |
| | | |
| گ | | |
| an | | |
| 8 | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | • | |

 $Wonderful!\ You\ have\ successfully\ learnt\ to\ send\ WhatsApp\ Template\ Messages.$

9. Facebook (outer section)

FB Business Manager Verification

For any business to have its official WhatsApp number, the first step is to get their Business Manager verified.

The steps below will help you through the process.

Step 1:

- Create a Facebook Business Manager page using the **FB page Admin credentials** for your Business Facebook page here, https://business.facebook.com/.

Note: Please make sure your FB page and Business Manager credentials are the same. Also make sure the Admin has access to edit.

Step 2:

- Log in to the page. Click on the Business Settings icon.

| SmatBot | 🗴 📔 SmatBot Al Chatbot for all your 🗴 📔 Help Guide Corrections - Google 🗴 🙉 Busin | iess Manager | × + | | | | Y | 3 <u>-</u> | đ | × |
|--------------------------|---|------------------------------|-------------|-------------------------|-------------------------|-------------------------------|------------------|----------------|-------|-----|
| - > C business. | facebook.com/home/accounts?business_id=806224137057109 | Q, | 8 \$ | 6 H | T 1 | (V E | | * | | |
| AliMail Enterprise E 💶 🕯 | 🗘 Settings 🖦 oobp 🧿 Online Logo Maker 🚱 Albaba Mail 🔕 🎯 🙆 smatbot mail 🖌 | doodleblue 🔤 feltso | 0 😐 | s3 image | Loan | Vector Imag | | | | 29 |
| Meta | = (| | | | | | | | | |
| lome | Introducing your new insights tool | | | | | | | | | |
| Iome | You can track paid and organic reach, learn about your current and potential audier | ice, and see how your conten | nt is perfo | arming acros | s Faceboo | k and Insta | gram. | | | |
| T Testing | See all insights | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | |
| Ads Manager | Good afternoon, Prema | | | | | | | | | |
| Ads Reporting | | | | | | | | | | |
| 2 | Ad Account Performance | | | Alerts | | | | | | |
| Events Manager | | | | No new ale | rts. | | | | | |
| | • | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | ¢ S | See All Alert | s | | | |
| | · | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | _0 | 21 | | | | | - L |
| | | | | 0 | | | | | | |
| | | | | New! Cros | s-accour | t reportin | g in Ad | s | | |
| | | | | Reporting Now you ca | n create re | ports in Ad | Report | ing the | t | |
| | No Ad Accounts You can create a new ad account or add an existing one to Testing in Bu | siness Settinos. | | include mu | tiple ad ac | counts with | in your | busines | 8. | |
| | | | | unique read | s-account h across a | reports to s Il of your ad | ee new accour | insight its | s ske | |
| | Go to business settings | | | | | | | | | |
| | 100 | | | 5 | ee report | | No | now | | |

- Go to the Business Info section and provide your business details. Click on save.

| 😑 SmatBot | 🗙 📄 SmatBot Al | Chatbot for all your X 🔗 (61) Business Settings X + | ✓ – a × |
|----------------------------|------------------------|--|---|
| ← → C 🔒 business.fa | cebook.com/settings/in | nfo?business_id=2438679909480544 Q | 🗠 🖈 📵 🕮 🗉 🐹 🔍 🔝 💩 🗯 🗐 🖬 🚳 🗄 |
| 🔨 AliMail Enterprise E 💶 📫 | Settings 🎫 ccop 🄇 | 🕽 Online Logo Maker 🔇 Alibaba Mail 🔇 🎯 🌚 smatbot mail 🔺 doodleblue 🔯 fi | eltso 😵 🥚 s3 image 👿 Loan Vector Images » |
| Meta | = | Business information | Permanently Delete Business |
| Business settings | | | |
| SmatBot | - | SmatBot | // Edit |
| • | | Business Manager ID: Primary Page: SmatBot | |
| 0.000 | | | |
| ₭ Data sources | v | Business details | |
| Brand safety | ~ | Land name of husiness | 4.45 |
| A Desistrations | | Fact set a manual statement | / Ean |
| B Registrations | | Address | |
| A Integrations | ~ | Insteadant felorgana 530014 | |
| Payment methods | | Business phone number | |
| A Security Centre | | Website | |
| | | Prevalue - | |
| S Requests | | Tax ID No tax ID | |
| Notifications | | | |
| 🖻 Business info | | Business verification status | View Details |
| ?) Setup Guide | | 27 Oct 2020 | |
| | | Business history | () Expert |
| 🕸 🚝 Q 🕐 | 2.4 | Event a history of management actions taken by people in this husiness account | pp sopers |

Enter Organization Details:

Enter your business details and click on next.

Note: The information you provide during the business verification process will be publicly visible if your page has a large United States audience or runs advertisements about social issues, elections, or politics in the United States.

Step 3:

- Within the Business Section, Click on Accounts and then on Apps.

| SmatBot | × | SmatBot Al Chatbot for all your X | (61) Business Settings | × + | | | | × - | • |
|---|-------------------------|---|---|---|--|--|--|------------------|---|
| ← → C ^a business.f M AliMail Enterprise E O I | acebook.cor Settings | m/settings/apps/496365008293851 🏧 ccbp 🧿 Online Logo Maker | ?business_id=243867990948054 | 4 smatbot mail 🔺 doodlebilue | Q (ट्रे क्रे | ⊖ HI I I s3 image 💟 | ut 💿 🔝 💩 | * ≕ □ | 0 |
| Meta Business settings | Ξ | Apps | | | | | | | |
| SmatBot | | Filter by name or ID Q | Add - Busines | is Api y: SmatBot ID: | 1 | Remo | Open in Ap | p Dashboard | • |
| Users Constants Pages Ad accounts Eusinesa asset groups Apps Instagrem accounts WhatsApp accounts | • | Ruciness Api | Connect an app ID Connect an app ID ther rules, people who hep nr ab to add to manage the app Request Soccess to an app Market Soccess to an app Market Soccess to an app Cellste a new app ID You can or mete a new app ID for | Inese account. Depending on map your businese account may Dene to an app 10 on behalf of rysur huniness. Missing important actions. Search by ID or name | Add Assets siness Api, You can v in order to access th | iew, edit or delete e app dashboard | Add Peot their permissions. Y and reduce the risks | ple our of | |
| R Data sources | ~ | | | Q) | | | | ~ | |
| Brand safety | v | | | | | | | | |
| Registrations | ~ | | | | | | | | |
| a 🖉 o a | 8D) | | | | | | | | |

- Note: If you don't have an App ID, create one using the link here.

Select My Apps in the dashboard.

| Help Guide Corrections - Google 🗙 🔗 Business Manager | 🗙 👩 All Apps - Facebook for De | velop × + | | ✓ – Ø |
|--|--------------------------------|-----------------------------|--------------------------------------|--------------------------|
| | nder=true | | Q 🔗 🏠 📵 👪 🖞 | : 🗙 🕫 🖬 兽 🗯 🖬 🔕 |
| 🕻 AlMail Enterprise E 💶 🏟 Settings 📼 oobp 🧿 Online I | ogo Maker 🕲 Alibaba Mail 🕲 🤭 | Z smatbot mail 🔺 doodleblue | 🔄 feltso 🔇 🥚 s3 image 💟 | Loan Vector Images |
| Meta for Developers | Ducs | Foots Support My Apps |), Search developer documentation | 🔺 🖓 Prema Sk 👻 |
| | | | | |
| Apps | | | Q. Search by App Name or App ID | Create App |
| Filter by Admin Apps | | | | Select All Start checkup |
| All Apps (2) | | euroahro | | |
| Archived | D as makes and the Business | App ID sectional assessment | | |
| Required Actions During | accor Tenting | Cusiness: Testing | | |
| Data Use Checkup (0) Data Use Check | © Complete > | | | |
| Administrator | Q 1 🖲 | Administrator | ۵ | |
| | | | | |
| | | | | |
| | Products | Programs | News | |
| 🔿 Meta | Artificial Intelligence | Developer Circles | Biog | |
| | AR/VR | F8 | Success Stories | |
| Follow Us | Business Tools Geming | ThreatEachange | Wideos Mate for Developers Page 2 | |
| 00000 | Open Source | Support | | |
| | | | Terms and Policies | |

Click on **Create App** and choose an App type.

| SmatBot | × 📔 | SmatBot Al Chatbot for a | all your 🗙 💦 (61) Busin | iess Settings × + | | | Y | - 0 | × |
|--|----------|--|---|--|----------------------------------|---|---|-----------|-----|
| ← → C | Settings | ım/settings/apps/49636 secop Online Le | 5008293851?business_id= ogo Maker 📀 Alibaba M | =2438679909480544 Iail 📀 🤭 🙆 smatbot mail 🔺 | ् ि 🕸 🕸 doodleblue 📴 feitso 🚱 | 😑 😹 🗊 💥 🥚 s3 image 💟 Loa | 🖗 🔝 👌 🇯 | # D 6 |) : |
| 🕫 Meta Business settings | ≡ | Apps | | | | | | | |
| SmatBot | | Filter by name or it | Q Add - | Business Api Owned by: SmatBat ID | AD 00020001 | Remove | Open in App Da | shboard 👻 | |
| Users Constant Service Const | ~ | Business SmatDot Grnatocol SmatDot Grnatocol SmatDot Grnatocol SmatDot SmatDot | Add an app Claim an app if your business n request. If they approve it, Small | App 10 | Add App | in view, edit or delete their is the app distributed and i | Add People permissions. Your educe the risks of | | |
| R Data sources | ~ | | | | | | Ť | | |
| Brand safety | ~ | | | | | | | | |
| B Registrations | v | | | | | | | | |
| a 🖉 o a | 112 | | | | | | | | |

Step 4 :

Provide the display name and choose the business account where the app will be connected.

Once done, click on create app and enter your password. Next, go to the business settings page and refresh. Your App should be displayed.

Step 5:

Navigate to this link - https://business.facebook.com/

In the Facebook Business Dashboard, select Settings and then Click on Basics. Enter your company's Privacy Policy URL and Terms of Service URL.

| 📑 Help Guide Corrections - Google 🗙 🕅 Business | Manager X (3 designermon - Settings - Facebo X | + | ∨ – ¤ × |
|--|--|--|----------------------|
| ← → C | s/387084333597096/settings/basic/?business_id=806224137057 | 109 역 날 술 🔞 👪 | II 🐹 🔍 🔝 👌 🗯 🖬 🔕 🗄 |
| M AliMail Enterprise E 💶 🏟 Settings 🐃 ccbp | 🗿 Online Logo Maker 🚷 Alibaba Mail 🚷 🞯 🗾 smatb | ot mail 🔺 doodleblue 📓 feltso 😵 🍅 sJ image 🦹 | Loan Vector Images » |
| ∞ Metα for Developers | Ducs Taols S | upport My Apps Q. Search developer documentation | 🛕 🛛 🖓 Prema Sk 👻 |
| D designerman 👻 App 10: 3870843333970 | 76 App Mode: Development 🚺 Live App type: Business | | () Hulp |
| | | | |
| Dashboard | Aco ID | App secret | |
| Settings | 387084333597096 | | Show |
| Basic | Display name | Namespace | |
| Advanced | designermon | designermon | |
| 🗓 Roles 👻 | App domains | Contact email 0 | |
| 🛆 Alerts 🛛 🗸 | 10 | designermoneywow@gmail.com | |
| App Review | Privacy Policy URL | Terms of Service URL | |
| | https://www.freepikcompany.com/privacy | https://www.freepilicompany.com/legal | |
| Webhooks | App Icon (1024 x 1024) | Caregoly Lifectvie * | |
| WhatsApp 🖌 | ET | at more information about app categories here | |
| Activity Log | 1024 x 1024 | | |
| E Activity Log | | | |
| | Varifications | | |
| | venications | | |

Save the changes, once done.

Step 6:

Within the Business Section, go to the Security Center. Check if the Start Verification button is enabled.

If yes, click on it.

| 🕫 (25) Business Settings | × Settings | 🗙 🛛 🙍 Just Black - Chrome Web Store 🛛 🗙 🕇 | ~ - D × |
|--------------------------------------|--------------------|---|---|
| ← → C 🔒 business face M 🖬 y 😨 🔂 📥 | ebook.com/settings | z/security?business_lid=752912282260992 ap 🕑 💟 🚾 < 🔺 🖞 Screener 🗊 NIFTY 🔇 Index 💿 💿 NSE 💿 oi | 반 ☆ 채 코 ⓒ 뉴 대 * : • Eq: |
| Meta Business settings | = | Security Centre | |
| M Rider | | 🔓 Two-factor authentication | 2* Add another admin |
| WhatsApp accounts | | Two-factor authentication makes it harder for others to gain access to your business account and take control of your assets. Manage my personal settings | You're the only business admin. Add another admin to help if you are locked out of your account. |
| R Data sources | ~ | Who's required to turn on two-factor authentication? | Add |
| 🕅 Brand safety | ~ | Admins only 💌 | |
| Registrations | ~ | 0 out of 1 people need to turn on two-factor authentication before they access this business. | |
| A Integrations | ~ | Review People's Access | |
| 🖉 Payment methods | | | |
| Security Centre | | Verification for Smatbot Started on 14 Jun 2022 | |
| A Requests | | Pick up where you left off to verify your organisation. | |
| C Notifications | | Eligible for verification | |
| Business info | | | |
| ? Setup Guide | | | |
| a 🖉 o a | et. | | |

After Start Verification is enabled, select the country.

Your Business Details will appear automatically filled.

| 🙉 (4) Business Settings | 😯 business account - Dashboard - 🗇 🗴 Settings | 🗙 🙍 Just Black - Chrome Web Store 🗙 🕇 | | - 0 × |
|--|--|--|--|-------------------|
| ← → C | ook.com/settings/security/business_verification/?/business_id=4255 | 03229354258 | Q 🖉 🕁 👿 🗃 | 0 * 1 * 1 |
| M | 💡 🕲 WhatsApp 👩 🚺 🚾 < 🛦 📶 Screener 👿 N | alFTY 🔿 Index O O NSE O ci O Eqty 🖾 💆 🗾 🗃 | 🖬 oʻ 🗖 😐 ANS 🔞 🖒 | * Other bookmarks |
| No Meta | + Back to Security Center | | | 1 |
| Business settings | | | | |
| | C 1. Erser your business detail | | | |
| | We'll need your business na you'll be asked to provide a b | we address, phone number and email to look up your organization. If we're unable to find it, business license and other documents to help with verification. | | |
| 🗐 Users 👻 | How we use your informatio Any documents or informatio obligations and to provent m | an icn you submit to verify your organization will be used to help us comply with our legal histor. For example impersonation or fraud. This helps procest you and the rear of the | | |
| Accounts ^ | Facebook community. The d cases, we'll update your public verification your graduate | documents you submit will be stored for one year, and longer in rare instances. In certain inkly available Page Transparency information with some of the details you confirm during one the ontion to make these details value. | | |
| Pages | | and the spread of the former strategy strategy. | | |
| Ad accounts | Legal name of business | a an a Richt Garageade | T ^e | |
| Business asset groups | Contraction and an and | | 46 | |
| Apps | Course y | | | |
| Instagram accounts WhatsApp Accounts | Street Address () | | | |
| 0 | | | | |
| age Data Sources ✓ | Street address 2/locality | | e | |
| 🗘 Brand Safety 🗸 👻 | City | State:province/region | k. | |
| Registrations V | | | | |
| 8 | ZIP/postal code | Business phone number @ | | |
| ₆ Ω ₆ integrations ↓ | | | de la companya de la | |
| Payment Methods | Business woosne This website domain name y | will be used to verify your email later. | | |
| Security Center | | | R | |
| & Requests | Next | | | |

Select Your Organization :

Select the correct business from the list, or select 'My Organization isn't listed' if you don't see your business on the list.

| 🕫 (4) Business Settings 🛛 🗙 🌍 business account | - Dashboard - I X 🔅 Settings X 🍖 Just Black - Chrome Web Store X 🕂 | ~ - O X |
|--|--|---------------------------------|
| ← → C | Ity/business_verification/?business_id=425503229354258 | Q 🖻 🖈 🕱 🛡 🕤 🌲 🖬 🛸 🗄 |
| M 🖬 🔰 🔕 🖪 🌨 🛦 🤗 🕲 WhatsApp 🥳 | 🛛 💟 🚾 🗲 🛦 📊 Screener 💟 NIFTY 🧿 Index 🧿 🚳 NSE 🗿 ci 🧿 Eqty 😰 💆 💆 🗐 😜 👿 🖒 | 🔿 🍦 AWS 👩 🕐 🔹 🧧 Other bookmarks |
| ©Meto ≡ | 1. Envir your business details | |
| - | ② 2 Select your business | |
| | ARV/PAULU JAVA BHARATH REDOV BEURATH REDOV | |
| [] Users · | KOPPULA BHARATH HAPPANA BARZYA PARAGAIRALLY JAJI REDDY BUDEM 491 80***2387 | |
| Pase | + 1 more | |
| Ad accounts Rusing or asset arrange | BHARAT REDDY CALIALA ALMANA SECUNDERMARK 50010, INSI | |
| Appe Instagram accounts | G VULAY BMARATH O NO DA / 288, NEAR THATA REDOV BUILEIND BARU CAMP +91 88***6449 REDOV CONTINUED (SALENDER) 50/10.1 mile | |
| WhatsApp Accounts | | |
| 🔏 Data Sources 🗸 🗸 | BLAGATH RECOV BLAVY NO Z VJAGANNO PHNAPREDOV DCPDNCC OULINY KATRAANGHAT, SODO79, India | |
| 🔘 Brand Safety 🗸 | BH MAAT REDEY VERRE JURARAM MAIN ROAD JUEUMETLA, SOODS, India | |
| A integrations | BH-MARTH EMMIA DEPEND DEPENDENT | |
| Payment Methods | | |
| Security Center | MJ BHARATH REDDY MAGAN COLONY PAKAL ATTAPUR, 500016, India | |
| 🐣 Requests | None of these match | |

If you have selected 'None of these matches', <u>learn how to upload official documents to complete</u> <u>the verification process.</u>

| 🕫 (4) Eusiness Settings 🛛 🗙 | () business account - Des | hibcard i 🛪 🔯 Settings | 🗙 📔 🚋 Rust Black - Chrome Web Store 🛛 🗙 📋 🕂 | ~ | - 0 × |
|-----------------------------|----------------------------|--|--|-------------------|-----------------|
| ← → C | ok.com/settings/security/b | usiness_verification/?business_id=42550 | 3229354258 | 윤 ☆ 👹 🖲 📀 | * 🛛 🛸 🗄 |
| M • V 0 0 • A | 💡 🤒 WhatsApp 🕑 🕻 | 🛛 💶 < 🛦 📶 Screener 🕎 Nii | FTY 🔇 Index 💿 O NSE O Di O Eqty 🛃 🔛 🛃 🞯 | 🖬 🖆 🔵 🌞 AWS 🎨 也 🔹 | Cther bookmarks |
| 00 Meta | ≡ ← Back to | Security Center | | | 1 |
| Business settings | | 1 Enter unur hureingen datalle | | | |
| B | - | | | | |
| | | 2. Select your business | | | |
| (T) Harry | | 3. Verify your legal business name | ne | | |
| Call Osers | · | Uplead a standard official docum | nent that matches the legal business name you entered: | | |
| Accounts | ^ | Legal name | | | |
| Pages | | Bharath Reddy | | | |
| Ad accounts | | Documents accepted for legal n | ame include: See more exemples | | |
| Rusiness asset croups | | Business license | | | |
| Appe | | Certificate of formation or incorp Tax or VAT registration certificate | e e | | |
| Apps | | | | | |
| Whate ten Associate | | Select the document language | · • • 1 | | |
| innais-upp Accounts | | | Description of the territory d | | |
| 🖓 Data Sources | × | | Vou can also ucload from your forders | | |
| Brand Safety | | | | | |
| S | | Next | | | |
| Registrations | ~ | | | | |
| | | 4. Verify your business address of | or phone number | | |
| @ 🖞 Q 🕐 | | | | | |

4.Verify your legal business address and phone number

| | 🖓 🕒 WhatsApp 🕑 | 💟 🖾 « 🛦 🔐 Screener 🗊 NFTY 🔇 Index O O NSE O ci O Eqty 🛃 🖉 🛃 😳 🗹 🖒 🛡 🧳 AWS 🚱 😷 🌸 📒 Other bookmarks |
|-----------------------|----------------|---|
| 🗙 Meta | = | 1. Enter your business details |
| Business settings | | |
| B | | 2. Select your business |
| | | 3. Verify your legal business name |
| (J) Users | | 4. Verify your business address or phone number |
| | | Upload a document showing the legal name of your business along with the mailing address or phone number you entered. |
| T Accounts | ^ | Address |
| Pages | | Hyderabad |
| Ad accounts | | Hyderabed, Telangana 500033, India |
| Business asset groups | | Phone |
| Apps | | Description of the second s |
| Instagram accounts | | Documents accepted for address/phone include: See more examples |
| WhatsApp Accounts | | Utaky bai, was electric or prone Bark statement with address |
| O Para Parama | | Business license with address or phone |
| 36 Data Sources | Ť | |
| D Brand Safety | * | Drag and drop a file to upload |
| Registrations | v | Nett |
| \$ 4ª Q 0 | | Choose a suffection mathod |

What documents are required for Facebook Verification?

- In some cases, no documents are required for Facebook Business Verification. This happens because Facebook may be able to match your business against publicly available

records. In this case, you will only be required to select from a list of publicly available records that Facebook shows you.

- However, if no public match is found, you will need the following documents.

1. Legal Name Document (One of the following documents)

- Business Registration (BR).
- Company Incorporation Certificate.
- Tax/VAT Certificate (BR).

2. Address Proof Document (One of the following documents)

- Bank Account Statement.
- Utility Bill (Phone/Electricity Bill).

You can check the current status of your verification by going to the **Security Center. If you need** any help, please contact us at <u>support@smatbot.com</u>.

Step 7 :

Select a Contact Method for Verification.

| 🕫 (4) Business Settings 🗙 | G business account - Dashi | coard - 1 x 🔯 Settings x 💼 Just Black - Chrome Web Store x + | - ¤ × |
|--|-----------------------------|--|-----------------|
| ← → C [*] | ok.com/settings/security/bu | innes_verificasion/?busines_jd=425583229354258 | Cther bookmarks |
| Meta Business settings | ≡ ← Back to 3 | lecurity Center | Î |
| B | • | 1. Litter your business betails 2. Select your business | |
| WhatsApp Accounts | • | 3. Verify your legal business name | |
| Brand Safety Brand Safety Sa | ~ | 4. Verify your business address or phone number 5. Choose a verification method | |
| Registrations | × | Choose how you'd like to confirm your connection to Bharath Reddy. | |
| 🖧 Integrations | × \ | My business contact email: example@gmail.com | |
| Security Center | | You may be vermed raster in you use an email associated with your wedsite's domain. | |
| C Requests | | My business domain. | |
| C Notifications | | Use your existing domain to verify your business. | |
| 🔁 Business info | | | |
| ? Setup guide | | | |

You can choose Text, Email. Call or Domain Verification to Get a Verification Code.

Get a Verification Code:

You can choose to receive the verification code on your business phone number via a text message, phone call, or email. The phone number option may not be available in all countries. If you don't get the code, you can request to receive another code. If you're still having problems receiving your verification code, <u>learn more about how to troubleshoot.</u>

If your domain is already verified, click on 'Use Domain Verification'.

If not, complete the domain verification process, then return to the Security Centre and click on continue. Learn when to use domain verification to verify your business.

Enter Verification Code (not applicable if you use Domain Verification)

Enter your verification code. Click on Submit.

| Uleal: I acention Dusiness vernication has been completed. | Great! Facebook | Business ` | Verification | has been | completed. |
|--|-----------------|-------------------|--------------|----------|------------|
|--|-----------------|-------------------|--------------|----------|------------|

| SmatBot | × Smat | Bot AJ Chatbot for all your 🗙 🔗 (62) Business Settings 🗙 🕂 | ✓ - a > | £ |
|--------------------------|--------------------|---|---|----|
| ← → C 🔒 busines | s.facebook.com/set | tings/security?business_id=2438679909480544 | Q @ ☆ @ H I M © I ♦ ★ ₹ I 0 8 | E. |
| M AliMail Enterprise E 🕒 | 🔹 Settings 🐃 o | cop 可 Online Logo Maker 🚱 Alibaba Mail 🚳 🞯 🌚 smatbot mail 🔺 | doodleblue 🔄 feltso 🗞 🥚 s3 image 🔯 Loan Vector Images 🛛 🛛 | E. |
| 70 Meta | = | Security Centre | | |
| Business settings | | | | |
| <u>e</u> | - | Two-factor authentication | V Backup admin added | |
| | | Two-factor authentication makes it harder for others to gain access to your business account and take control of your assets. Manage my personal | You have at least one other admin in this business who can help if you are locked out of your account. | |
| R Data sources | v | settings | | |
| â | | Who's required to turn on two-factor authentication? | Add | |
| Brand safety | Ť | Admins only | | |
| Registrations | ~ | 0 out of 4 people need to turn on two-factor authentication before they | | |
| A Integrations | | access this business. | | |
| | | Neview reopies Access | | |
| Payment methods | | | | |
| Security Centre | | Verification for Verified on 27 Oct 2020 | | |
| Requests | | Verified | | |
| C Notifications | | | | |
| 🕾 Business info | | | | |
| ? Setup Guide | | | | |
| a 🖉 o a | E. | | | |

Note: If the Start Verification button is greyed/disabled, check if the checklist below is completed.

- The Business Info section is filled as per Government documents.
- Check if the App ID is successfully copied and pasted in the App section.
- Check if your website/domain is verified in the Domain section.

- Check if the Business verification is initiated using Admin credentials. (Individual who created the Facebook Page of the Business).
- Check if you have included your Facebook Ad account.
- Check if you have added your FB Page in Pages.

How long does Facebook Business Verification take?

- After applying for verification, it might take 2-5 business days to get a reply back from Facebook.
- If everything aligns with Facebook policies, your business manager will get approved.

Please note that approval is not given by SmatBot and cannot be guaranteed by us. We can only help you with the process.

Facebook Installation

Step 1:

Login to SmatBot account.



Step 2

Click on **create a new bot**. Either pick from our pre-designed templates that have been customized for your business, or create a bot from scratch. You can find the guide here.


Step 3

Go to the Install tab. In the Install section, click on the 'Connect to Facebook' tab.





Log in with your Facebook account. Select the page you want to connect this bot with and click on **save**.



You are good to go! You can **unsubscribe** from the page or disconnect your Facebook account anytime.

| | C. A ann smathet co | m/bot2bot_id=67928/profi | le id=411&tab=setur | | 0 iii 🛧 🎯 🗰 🕆 💆 | |
|-------------|--------------------------------|--------------------------|-----------------------------|---------------------------------|--|-------------------------|
| | l Enterprise E 💶 💠 Set | tings 🖦 ccbp 🧿 Online | e Logo Maker 🔇 Alibaba Mail | 📀 🤭 🍙 smatbot mail 🔺 doodleblue | In the site of | an Vector Images » |
| | Bots > DEEPAK WEBSITE T | EST>Setup | View Setup | Flow Setup Install | | test test@feltsa.com |
| + 6 X | Miger | Ø | 0 | Messenger Bot Conn | lections available on your current Messenger Bot Connected Pages | plan : 10 (10 left) 0 |
| | Website / Blog Installation | Installation | WhatsApp Installation | Page Name | Status | Action |
| 0 | | | | Tester chotbot | Active | Unsubscribe |
| 0 | Ο | | | f Ad | d Page Disconnect Facebo | ok |
| 0 | Installation | Installation | Installation | Yo | ur bot doesn't seem to have any issue | |
| á | | | + | | | |
| 8 | | Ð | | | | |
| | Landing Page Installation | Widget | Drupal Installation | | | |
| | | | | | | |

Example

| SmatBot ~ | - × | 😑 Sma | tBot 🛩 | - | × | 9 | imatBot 👻 | | 8 | - × |
|---|----------|--------------------------------|---|-----|---|---|---------------------|------------------------|---------------------|-----|
| Get 11/2/20, 4:50 PM | Started | Tha us, res We soc | anks for messaging We try to be as ponsive as possible. 'Il get back to you on. | | • | | Where do to use sma | you want atbot? | prema Wh to t | |
| Welcome to SmatBot !! May I Know Your Name? | N | Wo res a d | ould you like to erve a time slot for lemo? | | | | Wel Mo What | bsite bile tsApp | 0 | |
| Welcome to S t pt II May I Know Jour Name? | prema | 9 | No | Yes | | 9 | 11/9 | AM SIZE | 6 | 0 |
| 🕂 😰 🕫 🚱 🍋 | | 0 12 1 | 😯 💷 🗛 | | | • | 00 | Aa | .0 | 14 |

Best Practices for a Good UX While Creating a Facebook Bot

Note: Here are the best practices we suggest for optimal user experience.

- Use a maximum of 3 buttons in Single choice/Multiple choice (Radio Buttons).
- Keep the text in your **Radio** buttons less than 20 characters.
- Ensure that the question text in the slider type is less than 75 characters.
- Use our dedicated question types for phone, email, rating, URL to leverage the Facebook suggestion feature.
- Keep the size of GIFs below 700kb to prevent delays in response time.
- Use images with a resolution of 500*260 for a better user experience.

Please Note:

- You can only connect one Facebook page with one bot.
- You can connect one bot with multiple pages.
- You can only connect one Facebook account to a SmatBot account.
- You need to disconnect your current Facebook account connected to SmatBot before connecting a new one.

Instagram

Automate all your Instagram messages with ease. Tailor your experiences to increase customer engagement.

Instagram Bot Installation

<u>Step 1:</u>

<u>Login</u> to your SmaBot account. After setting up your bot, navigate to the Install section. Click on **Instagram Installation** and then click on the **Connect to Instagram** button.



Choose a pre-designed template or create your own from scratch.



<u>Step 2:</u>

Next, login to your Facebook Business Account, to which your **Instagram Business Account** is linked. (If you have any questions with this step, please contact <u>support@smatbot.com</u> for help.)

<u>Step 3:</u>

Next, click on Edit Settings and select your Instagram Business Account.

| Log in with your Facebool | k account. | Click on continue | |
|--|-----------------------------|--|----------------|
| srsignup x + | | | |
| rofile_id=411&tab=setup | Q @ # (| profile_id=11&tab=setup | Q @ ☆ |
| iline Logo Maker 🔇 Alibaba Mail 🔇 🤭 🎯 smatbot mail | 🔺 doodleblue 🙍 feltso 📀 🌔 n | nline Logo Maker 📀 Alibaba Mail 📀 🤭 🍙 smatbot mail 🔺 doodlebl | ue 🕜 feitso 📀 |
| G Facebook - Google Chrome | - 🗆 × | View Patrice Electric Install | |
| facebook.com/login.php?skip_api_login=1&api_key=610 | 875355655943&kid_directe 🔍 | Log in With Facebook - Google Chrome - | × |
| Facebook | | facebook.com/v12.0/dialog/oauth?app_id=6108753556 | Q |
| Log In to use your Facebook account with SmatBot. | | ∞ = £ | ections availe |
| Email address or [phone number: Password: Log In Forgotten account? Create New Account | | Continue as Raghava Reddy? Smalbot will receive your name and profile picture. This desurt let Smalbot post to Facebook without your permission. Cancel Continue as Continue and Contin | nstagram Rot |
| | | By contriving, Smaller all enotine organizations to the information you share and isolations will reach which simulate accesses it. Evant more about this memory evaluation of the second structure of the second structure relative on out both of your tenzyme thereas accesses and to community based access to another with neared to your tenzyme thereas access the advectment access to another with neared to your tenzyme thereas access the advectment manual (in both). | |

<u>Step 4:</u>

Select the **Facebook Page** to which the **Instagram Business Account** is connected (Please select only one page).

| profile_id | l=11&tab=setup | Q (c) \$ | profile_id=11&tab=setup Q (2 |
|------------|---|-----------------|---|
| nline Logo | Maker 🔇 Alibaba Mail 🔇 🞯 🍙 smatbot mail 🔺 doodlebi | ue 🔯 feltso 🔇 🖡 | nline Logo Maker 😵 Albaba Mail 😵 🧐 🕥 smatbot mail 🔺 doodleblue 🧧 feltso |
| | View Setup Flow Setup Install | 1. | View Setup Flow Setup Install |
| | 🚯 Log in With Facebook - Google Chrome 🦳 🗖 | × | 🕜 Log in With Facebook - Google Chrome 🦳 🗆 🗙 |
| - | facebook.com/v12.0/dialog/oauth?app_id=6108753556 | Q | ■ facebook.com/v12.0/dialog/oauth?app_id=6108753556 Q |
| | 🔊 🗆 🐔 Raghava Reddy 🕶 | ections availab | 🕫 🗄 taghwa luddy 👻 |
| | Which Instagram Business accounts do you want to use with SmatBot? In a later step, you will determine what SmatDot can do with the accounts you've selected. All Instagram Business accounts (1) Select all @ Concel | nstagon Arte | What Pages do you want to use with SmatBot? In the next step, you'l determine what SmatBot? In the Pages you're selected. |
| | Smatters Invery Asiny and Terms Living Carrow | | to be connected internally Smatters Finany Rating and Terms Ling Corms |

<u>Step 5:</u>

Give ALL the permissions listed and click on Done.



<u>Step 6:</u>

| Smath | DI X | . T | | | | |
|-------------------|--------------------------------|------------------------|-----------------------------|-----------------------------------|---------------------------------|---|
| \leftrightarrow | C @ app.smatbot.co | m/bot?bot_id=12687&pro | file_id=11&tab=setup | e | . 🖻 🖈 🙆 🔣 T 関 | 1 |
| M AlMai | Enterprise E 💶 🌼 Set | tings 🐃 ccbp 🧿 Onlin | e Logo Maker 🔇 Alibaba Mail | 🕙 🤭 🔄 smatbot mail 🔺 doodleblue 🧧 | feltso 🚱 🌻 s3 image 👿 | Loan Vector Images » |
| E | Rots > New SmatBot Who | ntsApp>Setup | View Setup | Flow Setup Install | | S SmatBot info@smatbot.com |
| + | | | | | | |
| Ô | | | | Instagram Bot Connec | tions available on your current | nt plan : 15 (left) 0 |
| × | https:// | | | Ins | tagram Bot Connected Pages | |
| * | Website / Blog Installation | Installation | Installation | Page Name | Status | Action |
| 0 | | | | | | |
| 0 | 0 | | A | ragnava_0007 | Active | Unsubscribe |
| 27 | 0 | (B) | 0 | Ø Add P | Disconnect Instag | ram |
| 0 | Installation | Installation | Mobile App Installation | | | |
| - | | | | | | |
| | - | • | | | | |
| 8 | | 9 | | | | |
| | Installation | Installation | Installation | | | |
| | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | |

Next, select the **Instagram Business Account** to connect to the bot and click on save.

You are done! Your **Instagram Business Account** is now connected to Smatbot. If you are facing any issues, please contact us at support@smatbot.com.

Instagram Bot Specifications

Current Working Types:-

| ← ⊚ ⊷⊷ ⊡ F © | ← @ ⊷⊷ □ F 0 | ← ; | ← ⊚ ⊷⊷ ⊡ ¤ © | ← ⊚ ⊷∽∽ □□ ¤ 0 |
|--------------|--|---|---|--|
| | Encloyendarianes Holianes regioner angle In han is aname questions you might have on our annous region | Smatter Branding response to ending | | Smothat Brandy suggests & Evendy Brandy and State |
| | This is an fire as the dense pose. Learning the process process is a second to be a second the year balances is a second to be of the year balances is a second to the mean how to build a straight experience | Boy do Hind a date was not What paperses matched do you anaged Do you have any parameters | Conversion Atomic Maintenne Transformation along metalen Bertilt of myor metalentame scheberungen Bertitikt fra | Loss hading for poor strategy With doi 1 anti-str Hede Savell Thanks for your interest, LPT's schedule on ingenitriensi our will does of the data ware that suff. |
| | HL weld like to get quick feedback on your recent experience with Sarya | Em Tark in an agent? | Essel, beck Tell au this augerour ny raid Rochase | Flows solids 100 100 100 100 100 |
| o 🖟 🔁 💿 | o & E O | o & 🗔 O | o 🖟 🔊 🔿 | o ****** 🖟 🖾 |

- Question
- Single Choice
- Email
- Mobile Number
- Numerical Values
- Rating
- Location
- Range
- File Upload (only images)
- Website
- Contacts
- Dynamic Questions
- Statement
- FAQ's.
- Live chat
- Generic Templates
 - Title : 80-character Limit
 - Subtitle : 80-character Limit
 - Images: 10-images Limit
 - Buttons: 3 Button Limit. 20-character Limit (each button)
- Quick Reply Buttons (horizontal scrolling buttons)
 - No of Buttons Limit : 13 buttons

- Naming : 20-character Limit (each button)
- Image Slider
 - 10 Images Limit
- Slider
 - 10 Images Limit

Generic Template : - **Can b**e used to showcase products and/or to redirect users to purchase that product or to explore similar products.



Specifications of Generic Templates

- Title: 80-character Limit
- Subtitle : 80-character Limit
- Images: 10-images Limit
- Buttons: 3 Button Limit. 20-character Limit (each button)

Quick Reply Buttons

| No of Buttons Limit : 13 buttons | Naming : 20-character Limit (each button) | |
|----------------------------------|---|--|
| Pick a size: | Pick a color: | |
| Small Medium Large | Red Green | |
| Type a message | Type a message | |

Limits :

- No of Buttons Limit : 13 buttons
- Naming : 20-character Limit (each button)

Appointment Booking :- Automate booking appointments through Instagram. Note: This feature is coming soon.

Ice Breakers



Comment Reply Automation
Send personalized

replies to comments.



WhatsApp Cloud API

 The WhatsApp Cloud API is now available to all enterprises without charge, according to Meta (formerly Facebook). This will spare enterprises the expense of "Hosting" the API and let them access all of WhatsApp Business API's features.

What Is WhatsApp Cloud API?

WhatsApp Cloud API is the 2019-released WhatsApp Business API from Meta that runs in the cloud.

All businesses across the world may now launch WhatsApp Business much more easily thanks to the new cloud-based API.

Previously, organizations had to go through WhatsApp Business Solution Providers in order to obtain the WhatsApp Business API, which was a time-consuming process (BSPs). With the help of a secure cloud-hosted WhatsApp API, any company or developer can now simply use WhatsApp APIs, adapt them as needed, and reduce the time it takes to respond to clients.

WhatsApp Business On-Premises API vs. Cloud API Differences

1. Cloud API can be accessed directly from Meta for free, but WhatsApp Business API must be accessed via BSPs.

- 2. Companies do not have to pay for hosting and maintaining the cloud API.
- 3. Companies can directly utilize the Cloud API for free thanks to Meta.

Both solutions' features are identical in every way.

Benefits of the WhatsApp Cloud API include:

- Integrate WhatsApp messaging with third-party apps, CRM software, and analytics software.
- Verified WhatsApp Business profile with a Green Tick
- WhatsApp Bulk & Broadcast Messaging
- Use BSPs or CRM instead of an app or interface.
- Using third-party applications, WhatsApp Chatbot and chat automation
- Schedule numerous WhatsApp messages in advance.
- List messages, reply buttons, and CTA messages are examples of interactive messaging features.

How To Get WhatsApp Business Cloud API

If you're a business owner or a developer you can <u>Get Started with WhatsApp Cloud API</u> For Free

Step 1:

Go to <u>developers.facebook.com</u> and select My Apps.

Click on Create App.

| 📑 Help Guide Corrections - Google 🗙 🛛 🕅 Businer | s Manager 🛛 🗙 | 😝 All Apps - Facebook | for Develop × + | | | × - | . 6 |
|---|-----------------------------------|----------------------------------|-------------------------------------|--------------------------|-----------------------------|--------------------------|------|
| ← → C 🔒 developers.facebook.com/ap | os/?show_reminder=true | | | Q | e 🛧 📵 👪 I | 🗙 🔍 🖬 💩 🛪 | |
| 🛤 AliMail Enterprise E 💶 🂠 Settings 📼 och | p 🧿 Online Logo Maker | 🕲 Alibaba Mail 🕲 | 🐼 🔁 smatbot mail 🔺 | doodleblue 😐 feltso | 🔇 🥚 s3 image 👿 I | Loan Vector Images | |
| OMeta for Developers | | Docs | Tools Support N | y Apps Q. Search develop | er documentation | 🔺 🛛 🞯 Prema S | k ¥. |
| | | | | | | | |
| A | | | | 0.0 | has been blocked as they 10 | | |
| Apps | | | _ | L Searc | h by App Name or App ID | Create A | * |
| Filter by | Admin Apps | | | | | Select All Start checkup | |
| All Apps (2) | and designees a | | | | | | |
| Archived | App ID ASTRUMENT | 96 L | App ID TOTOMOLIUM Type: Business | 15694 | | | |
| Required Actions | Dusiness Testing | | Dusiness: Testing | | | | |
| Data Use Checkup (0) | Data Use Checkup | Complete > | | | | | |
| | Administrator | Q 1 | Administrator | ۵ | | | |
| L | - | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | |
| 🔿 Meta | | Products | Programs | | lews | | |
| | | Artificial Intelligence AR/VR | Developer Circle F8 | о в 1 | ilog uccess Stories | | |
| Follow Us | | Business Tools | ThreatEachenge | | Ideos | | |
| | 0 | Garning Open Source | Support | 1 | feta for Developers Page 7 | | |
| 600 | | | | | | | |

Step 2 :

- Select **Business** as the app type and proceed.



- Provide the display name and choose the business account for which the app should be connected.

Note : Avoid using trademarked names such as "WhatsApp" or "Facebook" for your app name.

- Once done, click on **create app** and enter your password.
- Once the home page is displayed, click on the WhatsApp setup button.

| 860802877104 App type: Business | Q | () Hel |
|--|--|---|
| Marketing API | | |
| and the start of t | Messenger | Web Payments |
| Integrate Facebook Marketing API with your app. | Customize the way you interact with people on Messenger. | Accept in-app payments through Facebook's secure payment system. |
| Read Docs Set up | Read Docs Set up | Read Docs Set up |
| | | |
| \rightarrow | <i>©</i> | S |
| ThreatExchange | Webhooks | WhatsApp |
| Share and learn about potential threats to help everyone stay more secure. | Subscribe to changes and receive updates in real time without calling the API. | Integrate with WhatsApp |
| Read Docs Set up | Read Docs Set up | Read Docs Set up |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | Integrate Facebook Marketing API with your app. Read Docs Set up TreatExchange Chare and learn about potential threats to help everyone stay more secure. Read Docs Set up | Integrate Facebook Marketing API with your app. Customize the way you interact with people on Messenge. Read Docs Set up Image: Customize the way you interact with people on Messenge. Read Docs Image: Customize the way you interact with people on Messenge. Read Docs Image: Customize the way you interact with people on Messenge. Read Docs Image: Customize the way you interact with people on Messenge. Read Docs Image: Customize the way you interact with people on Messenge. Image: Customize the way you interact with people on Messenge. Image: Customize the way you interact with people on Messenge. Image: Customize the way you interact with people on Messenge. Image: Customize the way you interact with people on Messenge. Image: Customize the way you interact with people on Messenge. Image: Customize the way you interact with people on Messenge. Image: Customize the way you interact with people on Messenge. Image: Customize the way way way in the messenge. Image: Customize the way |

- Select create a business account from the list and click on continue.
- In WhatsApp, navigate to getting started and click on add phone number.



- Next, create a WhatsApp Business Profile with display name, time and category. Click on next.

| | Plea | se enter your WhatsApp display | y name | Enter a | phone number that doesn't have a WhatsApp |
|-------------------------------------|-----------------|--|-------------------------------|----------------------------|--|
| | | Select Time zone | | | or WhatsApp business account and |
| | sele | ct category and business desc | ription | th | at you wish to use to create the chatbot. |
| | | | | | |
| alt 🖷 🗶 🔤 Sreffe | i x de m | Wateri K Di Olferiesi X 🕜 Argener K 🔕 Mitsulati X Mitsunalir K 🌢 | Reniestars X + - L | C B developers lactication | |
| C # developent | scabook.com/app | a 587584333597996/whatsapp-basi ness, iva-dev-consola/ibusiness_id=30622413705. 4, 19 🏠 | | allerapiant. 😆 🛊 betage 🗈 | n näp 👩 Onivelingefölden. 🕲 Könne Mal 🕲 🕘 🚊 ovalistitet 🛦 ikonfeite 🔢 felis 🕲 👙 si ivoge 🔀 Laev Velise Ivogen. |
| artise prost. | service in out | C Greechingtone. C westerne C C C Patterne L Societie L and C C | to mage 💽 toer wat of mages. | o for Developers = Ave to | Sashboard Dazi linki Support Hychepe 🖸 Sand domain assessments |
| a for Developers | e App Deepo | SATO Dana, Kadi Jaganal Dy Jappa 😋 Ganan monopat interferentiation | A General La | | 178410000095 Ann Inter Bullyon |
| gramar · | App IC DOVER | EXAMPLE ADDRESSENCE | | | |
| | | Celeane a Whatsukpp Busilieeus profilie Nour profiliaintermation will lace of the people on INNetApp. | × | | Automatical Control of |
| nbourd | | Whatship Rudrecc profile display name | NO-COMPANY-CONSUMPTION OF | POLICE CONTRACTOR | Add a phone number for WhatsApp X This is the number people with see when they shat with you seen how to use a number that's already on whatsApp |
| anga - | w. | L | warr's (Parity and a), | ings 🗸 | Plana sector |
| | | lineppe 0 | | n • | au-ei • 90008 00000 |
| | | (341+3523) Assemblers | · | · • • | You't movie a sale to renty the number. |
| tu 🔍 | * | Collegory | | | Provant werg a land on and the down prove all |
| Review | * | Cross Filler (1947) | | i Strien 🗸 | Ted ressage Photecal Process Processal |
| | | Butthett description - Optional | 111 I | All Product | las 🚥 |
| ka . | | | | A.2 | How rushe to 10011001174010 D Markey Balance Account to 1001120100119 D |
| - | | - | | | 5 |
| | | 123 | | burnet yes | Select Antelphere phone number |
| ins fearant | | Cito Is Add a please sambler | | (gester | They 2. Seed executions with the API |
| ing Sourced Roundian | | | union and disk stores a solar | BUCH4 | |
| ing Sourced Aquestion Namonia | | phone number, see the Deeview page. | 100 0 000 00 000 | | To send a test message, copy this command, partiely into Terminal, and press etter. To create your own message template, click here. |

- Add phone number and click on next to get a verification code.

| 🖸 Saaho:8 🚸 🗙 | SmatBo | t 🗙 📣 IBM Watson | 🗴 ၊ 🐼 (1) Business S 🗴 🚯 designerment 🗴 🔞 IND vs AUS T X 🛛 M New email at X 🛛 🌞 Free Vectors, X 🛛 + 👘 Y 👘 | a x |
|----------------------|----------------------------|-------------------------|---|--------------|
| ← → C 🔒 de | velopers.fa | cebook.com/apps/ | whatsapp-business/wa-dev-console/?business_i 🔍 🔍 🖄 😥 😥 🙀 🔞 👪 🗵 🙀 🖗 🔝 🤙 🎓 🗊 | 1 9 : |
| AliMail Enterprise E | • | Settings 🐃 ccbp 🧿 Or | line Logo Maker 📀 Alibaba Mail 💿 🞯 🍙 smatbot mail 🔺 doodleblue 🧧 feltso 📀 🥚 s3 image 🕅 Loan Vector Images | 35 |
| 0 Meta for Devel | opers | E App Dashboard | Docs Tools Support My Apps Q Search developer documentation 🔺 🚱 Prema Sk | |
| designermon | | App ID: 387084333597096 | App type: Business | () Help |
| Dashboard | | | 1 curl - 5 -X PGT * https://progh.facebook.com/v14.g/mb1sscopy7444//wiscages * 3 | |
| ිරි Settings | | ×. | umspississis ar (idativi (azaraki kitypisauyms)ungotkyysespiseliseninenergitetenseumer" - 4 "Gontenst-Type: spikolismiyisni" 5 - 4 "('Yessangu,product': 'Yesisy') "Yoto': 'Y', 'Ytype\': 'Yteplste\', 'Yteplste\'' ('Yesis)' Ylanauett': ('Yoto': 'Yesisy') "Yoto': 'Yesisy') | |
|) Roles | | × | | |
| 🗘 Alerts | 0 | × | 🕑 Run in Postman Sund mascarge | |
| App Review | | × | Step 3: Configure webhooks to receive messages | |
| Products | Add P | voduct | Create a custom webhook URL or use services that help you setup an endpoint. Configure webhooks. | |
| Nebhooks | | | Step 4: Learn about the API and build your app | |
| WhatsApp | | ~ | Review the developer documentation to learn how to build your spp and start sending messages. See documentation. | |
| Getting Started | | | Step 5: Add a phone number | |
| Configuration | | | To start sending messages to any WhatsApp number, add a phone number. To manage your account information and phone number, see the Overview page. | |

- You will receive a 6 digit OTP on the WhatApp number your provide. Enter that OTP when prompted.

- Once the verification coded is added, jump to step two and click on send message.

| | dauelanar fambanh nan /ar - 00700 | | |
|---------------------|------------------------------------|---|------|
| | Developers.tacebook.com/apps/36706 | 455559/Udojovinatsapp-ousinestywa-dev-console/zousiness_id=buoc2415/US7/Udojovinatsapp-ousiness/wa-dev-console/zousiness_id=buoc2415/US7/Udojovinatsapp-ousiness/wa-dev-console/zousiness_id=buoc2415/US7/Udojovinatsapp-ousiness/wa-dev-console/zousiness_id=buoc2415/US7/Udojovinatsapp-ousiness/wa-dev-console/zousiness_id=buoc2415/US7/Udojovinatsapp-ousiness/wa-dev-console/zousiness_id=buoc2415/US7/Udojovinatsapp-ousiness/wa-dev-console/zousiness_id=buoc2415/US7/Udojovinatsapp-ousiness/wa-dev-console/zousiness_id=buoc2415/US7/Udojovinatsapp-ousiness/wa-dev-console/zousiness_id=buoc2415/US7/Udojovinatsapp-ousiness/wa-dev-console/zousiness_id=buoc2415/US7/Udojovinatsapp-ousiness/wa-dev-console/zousiness_id=buoc | |
| 00 Meta for Develop | pers = App Dashboard | mine cogo maxes In Alcolo main Information International Colorador Internation Internation Internation | |
| designemon | - App ID: 387084333597096 App | p Mode: Development 🕐 Live App type: Businessa | () H |
| | | Send and receive messages | |
| Dashboard | | Step 1: Select phone numbers | |
| {ලි} Settings | v | From | |
| 🔊 Roles | × n | Send free messages with the provided test phone number. You can use your own phone number which is subject to limits and prioring. Learn more. | |
| 🔔 Alerts | • • | Phone number ID: D WhatsApp Business Account ID: D | |
| App Review | v | Te US +1 V Phone number | |
| Products | Add Picoust | | |
| Webhooks | | Step 2: Seno messages with the API | |
| WhatsApp | ~ | to solve a destinationary, cody residentiation, protection and press and in orders; positions instearing services and | |
| Getting Started | | 1 card -4 -8 POST 1 http://prath.facebook.com/vid.8//messages | |
| Configuration | | EXAMPS/Equiva (EVECES(47))2019/EMERTOSS (2014)2010/EMERTOSS (2014)2010/EMERTOSS (2014)2012/EMERTOSS (2014)201 (2014)2012/EMERTOSS (2014)2012/EMERTOSS (2014)2012/EMERT | |
| Resources | | A. "Content-type approximation". A. (Contenting products: Contenting of Contenting C | |
| Activity Log | | · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · | |
| E Activity Log | | (기 Aun in Postman Sand Investoge | |
| | | | |

- Next, check your WhatsApp. You should have received a message from Meta.



- Copy phone number ID, WhatsApp Business Account ID and save those details.

| | uoli x 📓 sineitos (Al Chelicoli x 📓 sineitos) (Al Chelicoli x 🛛 Al Pelebricanti licol (Cl X 🕠 Desginetticoli - Analis x 🛨 |
|---|--|
| → C ■ developers.facebook.com/app AlMail Enterprise E Settings = cch | ps/ whatsapp-business/wa-dev-console/?business |
| O Meta for Developers ≡ App Dasht | ocarrod Docs Tools Support My Apps Q. Saurch developer decamentation 👔 🛕 🆓 Prema Six 🔹 |
| designermon 💌 App ID: 3870843 | 333597096 App Mode: Development 🜔 Dive App type: Business 💿 Help |
| C Dashboard | Getting started |
| | Temporary access token |
| | EAAFgDRgzwagBACwGttG5ZA6r62/GuvpbLfJZBU (Copy O Refresh This token will expire in 23 hours. |
| 원 Roles 🗸 | |
| 🖇 Alerts 🚺 🗸 | Send and receive messages Step 1: Setext phone numbers |
| 🕑 App Review 👻 | From |
| Products Add Product | sena tree messages with the provide test prane number, you can use your own phone number which is subject to innits and pricing. Learn mere. Select the number |
| /ebhooks | Phone number ID: (]) WhatsApp Business Account ID: (]) |
| VhatsApp ^ | To |
| Getting Started | US +1 Phone number |
| Configuration | Step 2: Send messages with the API |
| Resources | To send a test message, copy this command, paste it into Terminal, and press enter. To create your own message template, click here. |

- Next, click on configuration, and edit the fields.
- Add your callback URL and verify the token.

| ← → C ■ develo M AliMail Enterprise E □ | pers.facebook.com/ap | ps/ whatsapp-business/wa-settings/?business_jd=8 Q 😰 🚖 😨 🔣 🧊 🗮 🦉 🔜 💩 🧰 🗐 | |
|--|----------------------------|--|---------|
| 🕫 Meta for Develope | ers ≡ App Dash | board Docs Touls Support My Apps Q. Search developer documentation 🛕 🎯 Prema Sk. | |
| designermon 💌 | App ID: 387084 | 33397096 App type: Business | () Help |
| Dashboard Settings Roles Alerts App Review Products Webhooks | v v v Add Protect | Configuration Verify taken Verify taken Verify taken Calleack URL C | |
| WhatsApp Getting Started Configuration Resources | ^ | Phone numbers Manage phone numbers You have @ production numbers and 1 lest number. | |

- Next, click on manage and add the 15.0 version and **subscribe** to all the webhook fields.

| AliMail Enterprise E. | settions 🚎 cripp 🦪 Online Loop Make | hatsapp-business/wa-settin | igs/?business_id=8 | Q 🖄 🏟 | t 🙂 👪 🗉 | 🖉 🐨 | in in a nes | =/ LI 🔮 : » |
|------------------------------------|---|----------------------------|--------------------|-----------------------------|-----------|-----|-------------|----------------|
| Meta for Developers | Ann Dashboard Webhook fields | Docs Tools | Support My Apos | C Search developer document | alian | × | 🕜 Prema S | ik - |
| designamion | Name | Test version | | Subscription version | | | | Юнер |
| Dashboard | account_review_update | v14.0 👻 | Test | v14.0 👻 | Subscribe | | <u>.</u> | |
| Settings | account_update | v14.0 • | Test | v14.0 • | Subscribe | | | |
| Alerts | business_capability_update | v14.0 👻 | Test | v14.0 💌 | Subscribe | | Manage | |
| App Review | message_template_status_update | v14.0 💌 | Test | v14.0 • | Subscribe | | | |
| hets Add F | messages | v14.0 👻 | Test | v14.0 💌 | Subscribe | | | |
| ItsApp | phone_number_name_update | v14.0 • | Test | v14.0 • | Subscribe | | ine numbers | |
| Getting Started V Configuration | | v14.0 👻 | Test | v14.0 👻 | Subscribe | | | |

- Go to business settings.
- In users, click on Generate New Token and then click on the FB page.
- Select your app from the list and select the following options:
 - Business_management, Catalog_management, Whatsapp_business_messaging, Whatsapp_business_management.



- If you are looking for Instagram, select the Instagram related options as well.

| - | A token will | be generated. |
|---|--------------|---------------|
|---|--------------|---------------|

| · → C | ok.com/settings 858917471907business_id=806224137057109 Q 🕑 🔂 🔨 🔞 🗮 🝸 😻 🦁 🔜 🖕 | |
|--|---|------|
| Meta usiness settings | System users | |
| Testing | Filter by name or ID Generate token X | Edit |
| Users People Partners System users Accounts | Addresses ward ward ward ward ward ward ward ward | |
| Business asset groups Apps Instagram accounts WhatsApp Accounts | € designermon ~ | |
| Data Sources | | |

- Next, copy the token generated and save it for future use.

- Within the same the Business Settings, Select System Users to add System User Name and System Role.

| ← → C A hurinors f | arehook com/s | attinas | |
|------------------------|---------------|------------------|---|
| M AliMail Enterprise E | Settings 🛋 | ccbp Online Logo | o Maker 🔇 Alibaba Mali 🔇 🎯 🙆 smatbot mail 🔺 doodleblue 🧧 feitso 🔇 🌻 s3 image 💟 Loan Vector Images |
| 00 Meta | ≡ . | System users | |
| Business settings | | | |
| Testing | - | | |
| | | | Create system user X |
| Users | ~ | | Enter a name for the system user you want to create below. |
| People | | | System user name |
| Partners | / | \rightarrow | |
| System users | | | System user role |
| - | | | Employee |
| C Accounts | ^ | | Testing will be the owner of this system user. |
| Pages | | | Cancel Create system user ters |
| Ad accounts | | | Herenz ayakempakar noi your baameaa minochanes here. Click on any system user |
| Business asset groups | | | to see and manage the assigned apps, the people who need access and the assets associated with them. |
| Apps | | | |
| Instagram accounts | | | |
| WhatsApp Accounts | | | |
| 🖓 Data Sources | ~ | | |
| | | | |

- -
- Click on to Add Assets.
- Now Select Apps to enable Manage App Permissions.

| | | | Select Apps Select Assets | | | | | |
|--|---|---|--|---|--|--|---------------------------------|--|
| | Sele | ectuser | | | | | | |
| | Click on | Add Assets | Enable Manage App Permi | | | je App Permisso | sson | |
| ← → ○ ■ tusiness laster Middle Dreppie C. ■ ● Secion Middle Dreppie C. ■ ● ● ● Secion Middle Dreppie C. ■ ● ● ● Secion Middle Dreppie C. ■ ● ● ● ● ● ● ● ● ● ● ● ● ● ● ● ● ● ● | keen hertingslaysteen eeen 1000050311147190 Toule np 6 stop 0 Orderlago Meim. & Absterla System eeers | engle-MacQ211007201 R g) (*) • X = V V U • (*) | C • terresterior | ge E. solge Colorian System Laters Ausign America to desig | n Noles. S filmin Nol S S | kul (no.799 ki go ki gi veninstreal ki siseshteka 📲 kibac 🔮 🌢 si | i maga 🕺 Laer Valar Imaga | |
| Tothg Vares Negie Tornes System wares | Pithe by outre of D C. A | Concerning Assess Takes Conceptuation and provide access takes, for perturbative takes galaxies have galaxies Conceptuation and personal access takes, for perturbative takes galaxies Conceptuation access Conceptuation access Conceptuation Conceptuation Conceptuation | ter and a second s | Eelect accel type Papes All accounts Catalogs Appa Pacts Instagram accounts | Debert anorete Zmarch & Pitter Naster D D designer mons | Acr C Reads app C Reads app C Reads app C Reads app and they, has the app and taken approximately C Reads app and reflects. C Reads app and reflects. C Reads app and reflects. C Reads approximately C Reads approximately | er gaar of tree git Age Severar | |
| To Accurs A | | we are the first difference of the second s | ali accurriti mena antodi groupa agram accounte antogo Accurren a Securrena 💌 | | | Fail samp Manga Aga Carrier analysis, charge aga withigh (not the sp and new analysis, Carrier C | | |

- Next, go to accounts, WhatsApp accounts and click on **settings** and then on WhatsApp manager.
- In the WhatsApp manager dashboard, go to Account tools and click on **Message Templates** and then select namespace. Save these details.

| 🗵 SmatBot Al Chai 🗙 📔 Hel | p Guide Corre 🗙 📔 SmatBot AJ Chel 🗙 📔 Sm | atBot Al Che 🗙 🦄 Paraphrasing To: 🗙 😝 desi | gnermon - 🕅 🗙 🐼 WhatsApp | Mana × + | ∨ - ¤ × |
|-----------------------------|--|---|---------------------------|-------------------------|--------------------|
| ← → C | ebook.com/wa/manlates/?busin | ness_id=8062241370571098twaba_ic | 0 Q 🖻 🏠 🙆 | 86 T 🐹 🗑 🛙 | 9 🚸 🗯 🖬 🔕 🗄 |
| M AliMail Enterprise E 🖸 🌣 | Settings 🐃 ccbp 🧿 Online Logo Maker 🚱 A | libaba Mail 🚱 🤭 🙆 smatbot mail 🔺 doodleb | lue 🧧 feltso 🔇 🥮 s3 imi | age 👿 Loan Vector Image | 25 |
| Meta = | Message templates | | | | deepaktest 💌 |
| WhatsApp Manager | | | | | |
| Testing - | | 10. IČenica – | | | |
| | | gary • Language • captors 2 | Q Namespace | | - device designate |
| Overview | Template name 11 | Messade Template Namesnace | Status 11 | Last updated 11 | × |
| Account lools | service banay bour economicement | ressage tempate namespace. | | | |
| Insights | Appointment uppare | 831c2df9_6ffa_4759_b0d4_c0f659ec518b | Active - Quality pending | | |
| Message templates | sample_happy_hour_announcement | Cancel Copy | Active - Quality pending | Sep 15, 2022 | |
| Catalog | | | | | |
| | Sample_happy_hour_announcement Appointment update | Portuguarse (BR) O happy hour uhegost. @@@ Sea Isla e aproveite o dia | Active Quality pending | Sep 15, 2022 | |
| | sample_happy_hour_announcement | English (US) | Active - Chaldre manderer | Sen 15 2022 | |
| | Applitment updats Select the number | Happy hour a hand QQV fease be meny and enjoy the | | | |
| | sample_flight_confirmation | Portuguese (SR) Etta é a sua continnação de von para (/12-020) em (22) | Active - Quality pending | Sep 15, 2022 | |
| | | References of | | | |
| | Tides update | ki marupakan konfirmasi pendrbangan Anda untuk (21)- (22). | | Sep 15, 2022 | |
| | sample_fight_confirmation | Spanish | Active - Quality pending | Sep 15, 2022 | |
| | | | | | |
| | sample_fight_confirmation | English (US) | Active - Quality pending | Sep 15, 2022 | |

- Next, go to Smatbot.com and <u>login</u> with your user credentials.
- Click on the bot that you want to configure the Cloud API for.
 - Create your bot flow in the flow setup. Navigate to the Install section, then click on **WhatsApp Installation**
- Now, add a new WhatsApp account.
- Select Meta as your WhatsApp provider. Choose your WhatsApp Name and enter your number given in Meta API.

| 1 . | a | - | | |
|---------|---------------------------------|---------------------------|--|-----------------------------|
| M AiMai | Enterprise E., 💶 💠 Set | trings 🕮 ocbp 🧿 Online Lo | go Maker 🚱 Alibaba Mail 🚱 🞯 🚺 smatbot mail 🔺 doodleblue 📓 feltso 🧟 | simage 🔀 Loan Vector Images |
| - | Bots > DEEPAK WEBSITE T | 15T-Setup | New Whatsapp Account × | T Marine and Andreas |
| ۵ × | | _0 | Add New WhatsApp Account | ted ony WhotaApp Accounts. |
| * | Installation | Installation | Whatsapp Name | PhoteApp Account |
| | CO Messangar Installation | Wordpress | Enter your product token | facebook Business ID. |
| | 0 | Ð | Enter your namespace | ect with Facebook |
| | Landing Page Installation | Widget Installation | Enter your Whatsopp Business Account Id | |

- -
- To get the product token number, copy the **temporary access token** that can be found in developers.facebook.com.
- For namespace, copy it from the message template in WhatsApp Manager.
- Add both phone number ID and WhatsApp business account ID in their respective fields.
- Once done, click on save.

| SmatB | X Io | SmatBot | × + | | | | | Y | - a × |
|--------|--------------------------------|----------------------------|---------------------------|---------------|----------------|------------------|---------------------|-------------------|---------|
| ← → | C app.smatbot.com | v/bot?bot_id=13563&profile | _id=411&tab=setup | | | 18 ☆ | 🖲 XX 🗉 📜 🗑 | 1 6 * | ≕ 🛛 🔕 : |
| AiMail | Enterprise E 💶 🏚 Settin | ngs 🐃 oobp 🧿 Online Lo | ogo Maker 🚷 Alibaba Mai 🧯 | 🔊 🧐 🔄 smatbot | mail 🔺 doodlei | olue 🙍 feltso 🚱 | 🥚 s3 image 👿 Loan V | ector Images | 39 |
| | Bots > MBG Copy>Setup | 5 | View Setup | Flow Setup | Install | | | test tost@folt | 50,com |
| + | | | | Connected | Whatsapp Acc | ounts | | | |
| * | Website / Blog Installation | Instagram | WhatsApp Installation | Name | Provider | Number | Product Token | Status | Actions |
| 0 | | | | neethu | meta | +91-7093265353 | EAAFlyugnYNQ | | ٥ |
| 9 | 0 | | 1 | Millegiagen | Patalaa | | | | |
| 25 | Messenger | Wordpress | Mobile App | whatsupp | suraiog. | | | | |
| 0 | installation | installation | Installation | | | Connect your Fac | ebook Business ID. | | |
| ᆐ | | | | | | f Connect | with Facebook | | |
| 8 | | θ | | | | | | | |
| | Landing Page Installation | Widget Installation | Drupal Installation | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | |

- WhatsApp might have sent you a message from Meta. Message "Hi" to that number to enable Smatbot's flow.



- Congratulations, you have successfully configured WhatsApp Cloud API.

Applying for Template Messages in Meta

Login to <u>business.facebook.com</u> and click on the business settings icon.

Select WhatsApp accounts, then click on **Settings**, and then on WhatsApp Manager.

| (11) Facebook | × | 🙉 (44) Business Settings 🛛 🗙 | + | ✓ – a × |
|---------------------------|------------|--|---|----------------------------------|
| | ss.facebor | ok.com/settings/whatsapp-business-acco | unts/109498448357247?business_id=2438679909480544 Q 🖄 🛊 | · ⊕ H I ₩ V I • ★ I • • : |
| M AliMail Enterprise E | 🗘 Sett | ings 🐃 ccòp 🧿 Online Logo Maker | 🗞 Alibaba Mail 🗞 🧐 🔀 smatbot mail 🔺 doodleblue 🔯 feltso 🔗 🌻 | s3 image 💟 Loan Vector Images >> |
| Meta Business settings | Ξ | WhatsApp accounts | | |
| SmatBot | | Filter by name or ID Q + Add | SmatBot Dwred by: SmatBot ID: 109498448357247 | Remove |
| | | SmatBot | a Add People | |
| [] Users | ^ | SmatBot Teating | People Partners Settings Pages | |
| Partners | | Smatbot Official | Business information | Edit |
| System users | | Country Official | Address | |
| T Accounts | ^ | smatter (micial | Currency | |
| Pages | | | EUR - Euro | |
| Ad accounts | | | Time zone | |
| Business asset groups | | | Business name | |
| Apps | | | SmatBot | |
| Instagram accounts | | | Business verification | |
| WhatsApp accounts | | | ventua Account status | |
| 🔗 Data sources | ~ | | Approved | |
| 🔘 Brand safety | ~ | | Payment method 360dialog GmbH | |
| 🖻 Registrations | ~ | | | |
| a 🖉 o o | 82 | | WhatsApp Manager | |

In the WhatsApp Manager dashboard, go to account tools and click on message templates to create a template.

| () (I) | Facebook 🗙 🕺 🐼 Meta Busine | ss Suite 🗙 🕴 🚯 All Apps - Facebook for Develop- 🗙 🕻 | 🗙 (44) WhatsApp Manager 🛛 🗙 | + | ~ - в x |
|---------------|--|--|-------------------------------|---|-------------------|
| ← → M ABM2 | C 🔒 business.facebook.com/wa/man ail Enterprise E 💶 🏟 Settings 🚎 ccbp | lates/?business_id=24386799094805448;wabe | anail ▲ doodleblue 🔽 feltso 🧯 | 9 🏠 😕 🏭 T 🐹 🕅 🔊 🌻 s3 image 🔀 Loan Vector | rimages » |
| ă ■ | Message templates | | | | SmatBot Testing 🔹 |
| 9 | Q, Search | Category Language B options sele | Nrmespace | | Create Template |
| Ð | Template name 11 | Language 14 | Status 14 | Last updated 11 | |
| - | sample_issue_resolution Issue resolution | Spenish Hola, [[1]], ¿Pudíste solucionar el problema que tenías? | Active - Quality pending | 15 Jul 2022 | |
| | sample_issue_resolution Issue resolution | Indonesian Halo ([1]), apakah kami bisa mengatasi masalah yang sedang A | Active - Quality pending | 15 Jul 2022 | |
| | sample_issue_resolution Issue resolution | English (US) H (11), were we able to solve the issue that you were facing? Select the number | Active - Quality pending | 15 Jul 2022 | |
| | sample_issue_resolution issue resolution | Portuguese (BP) OL (11), Nós conseguimos resolver o problema que você estav | Active - Quality pending | 15 Jul 2022 | |
| © | sample_happy_hour_announcement Appointment update | Spanish ¡Llegó el happy hout! 🎯 🎯 🖗 A divertirse y distrutar. 🏂 Luga | Active - Quality pending | 15 Jul 2022 | |
| Q () | sample_happy_hour_announcement Appeintment update | Indunesian Jam diskon te an tildat 🍞 🛞 🎖 Bergemeira an dan nikmati har | Active - Quality pending | 15 Jul 2022 | |
| Ð | sample_happy_hour_announcement | English (US) | Active - Quality pending | 15 Jul 2022 | |

Choose marketing as a category, name the template message, select the **language**, and then continue.

| (11) |) Facebook 🗙 🗎 🐼 Meta Busines | s Suite 🗙 🤤 All Apps - Facebook for I | Develop: 🗙 🚫 (44) WhatsApp Manager | × + | | Ý | - 1 | y X |
|--------------------------------------|----------------------------------|---|--|------------------|--------------------------------|--------|-------------|----------|
| ↔ AliMa | C 🔒 business.facebook.com/wa/man | lates/?business_id=2438679909 Onine Logo Maker 📀 Alibaba Mail 📀 😁 | 194805448twaba 43 Q 2 smatbot mail 🔺 doodleblue 🔟 feltse | 년 화 😌 영 🍦 sim | 🖽 🔝 駴 👦 age 👿 Loan Vector I | 🔝 👌 | * 🗆 | 3 : » |
| a ≡ | Message templates | | | | | Smat | Bot Testing | • |
| 9 | New message template | | | | Help Centre Ca | ncel C | antinue | |
| 8 | | Category Choose a message template. Transactional Send scaraf updates, order updates, eleft Marketing Send prometional effect, product anneuros of Cher-time passerords. Select the number Name | its and more to share important information. comonts and more to increase busiveness and engagement access their accounts. | | | | | |
| @ <mark>9</mark> 0 | | Name your message reinpans. | . You can delete or add more lanouaces later. | 4/512 🥝 | | | | |
| 0 | | Q. English × | Tou can derete or add more tanguages later. | | | | | |

In the header section, choose media. Add the image, video or document.

| | C ê business.facebook.com/wa/mar Iates/?business_id=24386799094805448.waba_ al Enterprise E â Settings == cobp O Online Loop Maker â Mababa Mell | 🔺 doodleblue 📓 feltos 🚱 🏟 s3 image 🕅 Loan Vector Images 🔹 |
|--------|---|---|
| 3 = | Message templates | Smat3ot Testing 💌 |
| 9 | deepak_test123 • English 🖌 Category Marketing 👻 | Help Centre Back |
|) 1 | Edit template Header Optional Add a title or choose which type of media you'll use for this beader. Modia | Add sample underst |
| 2 | Image Video | Smälbol. We look forward to showing you our jalidium and understanding how Simathol can help streamline your business processes. |
| 2 | Body Enter the text for your message in the January that you've selected | |

In the body section, enter the text message and add variable parameters {{1}}

| 🙉 (46) WhatsApp Manager | x + | × в − ∨ |
|--|--|--|
| ← → C | 2000k.com/wa/man 🛛 lates/?business_id=24386799094805448waba_ 🔍 🖄 🕁 😌 🔣 | 11 🗰 🔍 12 💩 🗯 🛒 🖬 🔕 🗄 |
| M AliMail Enterprise E., 😐 🔅 S | ettings 🐃 ocbp 🧿 Online Logo Maker 🤣 Alibaba Mail 🚳 🧐 🛂 smatbot mail 🔺 doodleblue 🧧 feltso 🤣 🥚 s3 ima | ge 🕅 Loan Vector Images » |
| WhatsApp Manager | Message templates | SmatBot Testing 👻 |
| 😑 SmalBot 👻 | tester • English 🖌 Category Microting 🔹 | Help Centre Back |
| Overview Account tools Indents Mexcege templates Prone numbers Cetalogue | Edit tamplata Add sample Submit Header opriori Add sample Submit Header opriori Add sample Submit More Body Body Body Mill (10), This is a reminder for your demo with Simaboot that is coming up in 30 minutes. If you would like to reschedure/cancel piesse 159/1020 We filt building below. Downsters. 194004 B I S d/t + Add santable or | Provided #16(11): This is a reminder for your demo #16(11): This is a reminder for your demo public that is compared by the form reschedule compared by the form the form 11(11): The form |
| ⊛. ₽ ი⊚ അ | Footer Optional Add a nont line of test to the bottom of your message template. If you add the marketing opt out buttor, the associated footer will be shown here by calculat. Enter test in English 0/50 | |

Copy the variable parameters {{1}} and click on add sample to add the content for the variable parameter.

| 🚫 (46) WhatsApp Manager | × + | | ~ - © × |
|---|---|--|--|
| ← → C | oook.com/wa/mar lates/?business_id=2438679909480544& ettings 🛋 ocbp 🧿 Online Logo Maker 🎯 Albabe Mail 🕲 🞯 🔁 sma | wabaj Q 년 ☆ 📀 🎛 nbot mail 🔺 doodleblue 🔛 feltso 🔗 🥌 s3 imag | 🝸 💓 😨 🍐 🌧 🗊 🗖 🚳 🔅 e 🕅 Loan Vector Images » |
| ™ ^{Meta} ≡ WhatsApp Manager | Message templates | | SmalBdt Testing 📼 |
| SmalBot • | tester • English 🖌 Category Marketing 🔹 | | Help Centre Bark |
| Overview Account tools Insipits Message templates Ceteropye | File template Also sample Content Also sample Content To have understand which kind if massage that you want to send, two have to be prior to provide specific content a sample to you to sample sample to ingoing to the same to be prior to provide specific content a sample to you to sample sample to prior to an output provide sample content is your ecomplex. Learn more set of the prior to an output provide sample content in your ecomplex. Learn more set of the prior to an output provide sample content in your ecomplex. Learn more set of the prior to an output provide sample content in your ecomplex. Learn more set of the prior to an output provide sample content in your ecomplex. Learn more set of the prior to an output provide sample content in your ecomplex. Learn more set of the prior to an output provide sample content in your ecomplex. Learn more set of the prior to an output provide sample content in your ecomplex. Learn more set of the prior to an output provide sample content in your ecomplex. Learn more set of the prior to an output provide sample content in your ecomplex. Learn more set of the prior to an output provide sample content in your ecomplex. Learn more set of the prior to an output provide sample content in your ecomplex. Learn more set of the prior to an output provide sample content in your ecomplex. Learn more set of the prior to an output pr | Preview Preview This Synchronia is a remember for your during you would like to reach up in 30 minutes you would like to reach up in 30 minutes to the bufford before to the buff | Prevent If (57). The is a remarker for your demo- vant anabut that a corring up in 33, muture. If you would like to restand-defactor please use the buttors before. |
| a . | Character 194104 Pooter Optimal Add a short line of test to the behan of your message temptate. If you add the marketin distruct Ender back in Engrun | g opt-out buttor, the associated boster will be shown here by | _ |

Add buttons as required for your template message. You can add call-to-action buttons or customize the buttons.

| | 3 | 🔒 business.facebook.com | /wa/mar | ann Mak | lates/?busines | s_id= | 24386799094805448;waba 43 Q | 6 \$ | · H | I I I | ulartar lana | 3 | * | | |
|----------|-------|--|--|------------------|----------------|--------|---|------|----------|----------|---------------|--------|----------|---------|----|
| | lessa | age templates | un cop O Unine C | ogo mak | | 104 M | i 🔮 🥶 🛃 smaadot maii 🔺 coociebiue 📷 reisa | • | so image | USA COAR | n vector imag | Sma | itBot Te | sting 💌 | |
| • | dee | pak_test123 • English | n 🖌 Category: | Marketir | ng 💌 | | | | | | 🕑 Help | Centre | Back | | • |
| 9 | Cal | We recommend adding the Allow customers to request more. | e marketing opt-out bu to opt out of all market | tton ing mess | ages. This can | help n | educe blocks from customers and increase your quality rating. L | earn | | | | | | | |
| | | Type of action | Button text | | Country | | Phone number | | 83 | | | | | | í. |
| | | Call Phone Number 💌 | Call us | 7/25 | US +1 | ٠ | 9876543210 10 | 20 × | | | | | | | |
| Ô | 2 | Type of action | Button text | | URL type | Wet | site URL | | | | | | | | |
| 4 | 11 | Visit Website 🔹 | Visit US | 8/25 | Static 💌 | ht | tps://www.smatloot.com/ 24/20 | 00 × | | | | | | | |
| ~~~ | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |

Once done, click on submit.

| 🙉 (46) WhatsApp Manager 🛛 🗙 | + | | | v - | - a × |
|---|--|---|--------------------------|-------------------------|--------------|
| ← → C | ook.com/wa/man lates/?bu | isiness_id=24386799094805448twaba | Q 🖻 👌 📵 🖽 | 1 M V II 0 * = | I 🖬 🚯 🗄 |
| M AliMail Enterprise E 💶 🏮 Set | ttings 🐃 ocbp 🧿 Online Logo Maker 🔇 | Alibaba Mail 🔕 🥸 🔽 smatbot mail 🔺 doodle | blue 🔯 feltso 📀 🍅 s3 ima | ge 👿 Loan Vector Images | 30 |
| ∾ ^{Meto} ≡ WhatsApp Manager | Message templates | | | SmetBot | Testing • |
| SmetBot 👻 | Q Search C | ilegory • Language • 8 options selc | ★ Namespace | Create Te | engrate |
| Overview | Template name †J | Language 11 | Status †L | Last updated 11 | - |
| Account tools ^ | sample_issue_resolution usue resolution | Spanish Hola. ()(]]. «Pouliste solucionar el problema que tenías? | Active - Quality pending | 15 Jul 2022 | |
| Message templates Phone numbers | sample_issue_resolution | indonesian Haio (31), apakah kami bisa mengetasi masalah yang sedan | Active - Quality pending | 15 Jul 2022 | |
| Catalogue | sample_issue_resolution | English (US) Hi ((1)), were we able to solve the issue that you were facing? | Active - Quality pending | 15 Jul 2022 | |
| | sample_issue_resolution | Portuguese (BR) OL ([11]). Nás conseguímos resolver o problema que você est, . | Active - Quality pending | 15 Jul 2022 | |
| | sample_happy_hour_announcement Appointment update | Spanish "Degó el hepsy hour: 🎯 😨 A di vertirse y disfroter. 🅭 Lu | Active - Quality pending | 15 Jul 2022 | |
| | sample_happy_hour_announcement Appointment update | Indonesian Jam discontelah tibal <table-cell> 🎯 😵 Bergembiralah dan rikmati</table-cell> | Active - Quality pending | 15 Jul 2022 | |
| | sample_happy_hour_ennouncement Appointment update | English (US) Happy houris have 🔐 🎯 😤 Please be many and enjoy the | Active - Quality pending | 15 Jul 2022 | |
| | sample_happy_hour_announcement | Portuguese (BR) | Anthra Confidence day | 15 14 2022 | |

Great! You have successfully applied for a WhatsApp Template Message.

Note : You will get a confirmation from Facebook within 24 business hours.

Applying for Green Tick Verification In Meta

Login to <u>business.facebook.com</u> and click on the **Business Settings** icon.

Select WhatsApp accounts and click on settings, then click on WhatsApp Manager.



In the WhatsApp Manager Dashboard, navigate to account tools.

Select phone numbers and click on settings.

| () (11) Facebook | × | 🔿 (44) Business Settings | × 🕫 | (44) WhatsApp Ma | inager X | + | | | Y | - 0 | 2 |
|--|----------|---|--------------------------|-----------------------------------|------------------------------|---------------------|---------------------|----------------------------|------------------|-----------------|---|
| ← → ♂ (🔒 business.f M AliMail Enterprise E 💿 🕯 | acebook. | com/wa/man s 🐃 ccop 🥑 Online L | rs/?busin ogo Maker 🔇 | ess_id=24386799 Alibaba Mail 🔇 | 0948054482waba 😁 🚺 smatbo | id= tmail 🛦 dood | e leblue 🛛 feitso 📀 | ☆ 💿 ⊞ 🗓 😝 s3 image 💟 Lo | an Vector Images | * • • | • |
| ∾ ^{Meta} WhatsApp Manager | Ξ | Phone numbers | | | | | | | | SmatBot Testing | • |
| SmatBot | • | Q. Search by name, numb | er or court | Filter | • | | | | | | 4 |
| Overview | | Phone number 1 | Blatus 14 | Quality rating 14 | Messaging limit 14 | Country 14 | Name 14 | Certificate | Delete | Setings | Ľ |
| Account tools Insights Message templetes Phone numbers Catalogue | ^ | ux +91 70932 65353 1 phone number (max: 1) | ₽ Connected | • High | 1K customers/2 | India | SmatBot Testing | View | û | • | |
| | | S | elect the numbe | er | | | | | | | |
| | - | | | | | | | | | | - |

In the profile photo section, you can upload the image for your business profile.

| | 1) Facebook X N | leta Business Suite 🗙 🛟 All Apps - Facebook for Develop: 🗙 🐼 (44) WhatsApp Manager | × + | • - B × |
|-------|--------------------------------------|--|--------------------------|--------------------|
| ← → | C 🔒 business.facebook.com/ | wa/man rs/?business_id=2438679909480544&waba_id= kch | Q 🖻 🛧 😨 🖽 🝸 | 📕 👽 🔝 兽 🗯 🖬 🚳 🗄 |
| M Ali | Mail Enterprise E.,, 💶 🏟 Settings 🕮 | o cobp 🧿 Online Logo Maker 🧐 Alibaba Mail 🕘 🧐 🔁 smatbot mail 🔺 doodleblue 🔛 fi | eltso 🕲 🌻 s3 image 🕅 Loa | 1 Vector Images >> |
| G | Phone numbers | | | SmatBot Testing 💌 |
| Ξ | | | | |
| | Phone numbers > Phone number setting | 9 > +817093265353 | | See |
| 0 | Settings | Profile photo | Busine | as profile preview |
| Ð | Insights | This will be visible on your business profile | <i>←</i> | |
| | Profile | Choose file No 14 44 786 | | |
| | Messagellinks | Display name | | |
| | Two-step verification | Column | 1000 | EmotBat |
| | | Professional services | Sma | |
| | | | Busine | is account |
| | | An official business account has a green tick $@$ next to its name. This shows that Markannias confirmed that an authority and notable | S Pro | fessional services |
| | | brand owns this account. Learn more. | S atta | is://smatbot.com/ |
| â | | Submit Request | | |
| | | Description | | |
| Q | | 0/512 | | |
| 0 | | ter al tra- | | |

If you wish to change the existing display picture, you can do so in this section.

Select the category of your business. Provide your business description and contact information.

Note : All these details, including profile photos, will be automatically filled in once your Facebook Business Verification is complete.

Next, click on submit request.

Note : In case the submit request button is greyed out, you will need to check and complete the following:

- a) Your Facebook Verification must be completed.
- b) Your Profile Display name must be approved.
- c) Your Two-Step Verification must be turned on.

A pop-up screen displaying your request will appear.



Please provide the reason for applying for Green Tick Verification.

Provide the social media links to show your account is legitimate.

If the business name is in a language other than English, please provide those details as well.

Add the Facebook page and click on submit.

Great! You have successfully applied for Green Tick Verification for Meta.

Note : Facebook will review the request within 1-2 business days.

Sub Flows -

Create sub-flows within your main chatbot flow to stay organized and keep only relevant details together.

You can set up sub-flows and create as many as you need.

You can refer/call content from the sub-flows anytime in the main flow.

Step 1:

In flow set-up, create your chatbot flow.

Step 2:

Click on the drop-down in the main menu and then on the plus icon to create a sub-flow.

Enter a name for your sub-flow and click on create. Add questions just like you would in the main flow.

You can add, edit or delete sub-flows.

Step 3:

If needed, refer/add your sub-flow questions in the main flow & add jumps.

Great! You have successfully created a sub flow.